NULL AND DISPLACED SUBJECTS

by

Ur Shlonsky

Submitted to the Department of Linguistics and Philosophy on August 1, 1987, in partial fulfillment of the requirements of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Linguistics

ABSTRACT

This work explores three problems related to the syntactic position of clausal subject: Do all clauses require subjects? What conditions must be met for subjects to appear postverbally? Where are postverbal subjects attached?

The discussion begins with a study of expletives, in particular, of the relationship between expletives and postverbal subjects. It is hypothesized that expletives are fillers for the syntactic subject position at S-structure and that they are replaced, in Logical Form, by the 'semantic' subject of the clause. Various consequences of this hypothesis are probed, in particular, for Case theory and Binding theory.

Chapter 3 develops a theory of Case which incorporates both the Case Filter and the condition that heads of chains must be Case marked. The particular statement of this module of Universal Grammar has consequences for the status of null expletives and variables. There follows a discussion of the Case status of variables, in particular, in positions which are clitic doubled.

Ch. 4 studies subject inversion. First, the 'licensing' conditions for postverbal subjects are discussed and the relevant facts from Hebrew are presented. It is then argued that Hebrew has a rule of subject postposing which adjoins a subject to VP, on the left. It is argued that Spanish utilizes the option of left, as opposed to right, adjunction to VP, while Italian does not. Various crosslinguistic differences can be accounted for on the basis of this distinction, especially with regards to the distribution of the 'definiteness effect'.

Ch. 5 considers the pro module of UG. It is shown that null expletives which are replaced, in LF, by arguments which are 'personal', need to be supported as S-structure by coindexing with overt grammatical features.
A study of the possessive/existential alternation in Hebrew is the topic of the final chapter. It is proposed that the verb be/have is ambiguous between an unaccusative predicate taking a single argument to which nominative Case is assigned and a verb subcategorized for two internal arguments, one of which is marked with accusative Case, the other with inherent dative Case. The questions relating to this verb are considered with the intention of clarifying further the notion of syntactic subject.

Thesis Supervisor: Noam Chomsky
Title: Institute Professor
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Where to begin? This thesis could not have been written without the enduring support of the members of my thesis committee, Noam Chomsky, Richard Kayne and Wayne O'Neil. Noam read each and every draft and his copious comments have found their way into practically every page of this thesis. My intellectual debt to him is so great that I cannot even find the words to express my gratitude. It was a pleasure to work with Richie Kayne over the last year and a half, since he arrived at MIT. Many of the issues I discuss, particularly in the latter sections of Ch.3, first came up in class and in personal discussions with him. His work on comparative syntax has influenced the spirit of my own work a great deal.

In addition to a formal thesis committee, I have had the benefit of a 'silent' committee, whose influence and interest in my work has been no less meaningful than that of my 'formal' committee. I wish to thank Richard Larson and Howard Lasnik for enduring interest and much support. Richard resisted joining my formal committee because he was already formally committed to several others yet the number of hours we spent talking about my work exceeded by far the requirements imposed on a formal committee member. In the final two months of writing, when I felt even more confused than when I began to write, Howard's active support was greatly appreciated. His comments and insights have made their way into Chapters 2 and 3.
Hagit Borer accompanied the first months of writing and her numerous suggestions, especially last Fall, were of tremendous help in helping me formulate the questions and issues I wanted to explore. Needless to way, her seminal work in Hebrew syntax has paved the way to much of my own.

Ken Hale and Luigi Rizzi read early drafts of several papers and made very helpful suggestions as did Kyle Johnson w.r.t to a late draft of Chapter 2.

Two of my peers deserve special thanks: Tova Rapoport and Maggie Browning. Many of the puzzles I encountered in the course of writing were resolved in discussions with them.

Many of the ideas which have found their way into this work were first formulated in discussions with the numerous visitors, Fellows and students who stalked building 20 in the Fall of 1986. Special thanks go to Adrianna Belletti, Pino Longobardi, Alessandra Giorgi, Tim Stowell, David Pesetsky, Hans den-Besten, Yosef Grodzinsky, Tanya Reinhart, Mohammed Guerssel, Naoki Fukui, Beth Levin, Ester Torrego, Janis Melvold, Barry Schein, Andy Barss, Sam Epstein, Juan Uriagereka, Guligleimo Cinque, Viviane Deprez, Mike Kenstowicz, Andrea Calabrese, Itziar Laka, Joseph Aoun, Dominique Sportiche, Betsy Ritter, Marc Ryser, Kelly Sloan and Mary Laughren.

I am grateful to audiences in Tuscon, Chicago and Venice to whom the material in Chapters 4 and 5 was presented.

I have gained an enormous amount from my fellow students at MIT. When I first came here to visit, Morris Halle told me that 80% of what I will learn,
will be from fellow students and was he ever right. My peers, Steve Abney, John Lumsden, Carol Tenny, Jennifer Cole, Loren Trigo, Doug Saddy, Hyon-Sook Choe and Michelle Sigler were a real treat to have around for these four years.

Finally, I thank the administration of our department for the privilege of four years of financial support.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter One:</th>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Two:</td>
<td>Expletives</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Against Case Transmission</td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 The Subject Position</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Expletive Replacement</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 What is an Expletive Replaced by?</td>
<td>Romance Free Inversion</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 there-Replacement</td>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7 Hebrew Impersonal Passives and Expletive Replacement</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8 Expletive Argument Pairs and Binding Theory</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9 Agreement and Other Problems</td>
<td></td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10 it-Replacement</td>
<td></td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX</td>
<td>Pleonastic Elements in Hebrew</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Three:</td>
<td>Case Theory</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Introduction</td>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Expletives and Case</td>
<td></td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Variables and Case</td>
<td></td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Variables, Case and Clitic Doubling</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX</td>
<td>On Extraction from NP in Hebrew</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Four:</td>
<td>Subject Inversion</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Chapter Abstract</td>
<td></td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 Subjects internal to VP and Subjects Adjoined to VP</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3 A Description of Subject Inversion in Hebrew</td>
<td>138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4 The Two Inversion Strategies in Hebrew</td>
<td>154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 Triggered Inversion: Verb Preposing or Subject Postposing?</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6 The Derived Word Order of Inversion</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7 On Certain Differences and Similarities among Italian, Spanish and Hebrew</td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8 A Final Speculation: VSO Languages</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Five:</td>
<td>The pro Module</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1 Chapter Abstract
5.2 Null Subjects of Inversion
5.3 Properties of 'Long' WH-movement in Hebrew
5.4 The Extractability of Postverbal Subjects and the Theory of pro
5.5 Extraction of Postverbal Subjects: French
5.6 pro-drop and the Expletive Replacement Hypothesis
5.7 An Argument in Favor of a Structural Subject Position
5.8 Expletive Replacement and Extraposition
5.9 Argument pro-drop in Hebrew and the Feature [+/- person]

Chapter Six: The Be/Have Alternation: Possessives, Existentials and Locatives in Hebrew
6.1 Chapter Outline
6.2 The Status of yeS
6.3 The Categorial Status of the Dative Possessor: ie-phrase as a PP
6.4 The Grammatical Function of the Dative Possessor
6.5 The Status of the Possessed NP
6.6 Accusative Objects in Locative Constructions
6.7 Impersonal Agreement with a Dative Subject
6.8 pro-Drop in Possessive yeS Constructions
6.9 Existential yeS
6.10 The Inflectional Suffixes: Subject Clitics or AGR?
6.11 Hebrew as a North Italian Dialect
6.12 The Be/have Alternation: An Interim Summary
6.13 Stylistic Inversion in a yeS Clause
6.14 Other Unaccusatives with Assign Accusative Case
6.15 The h.y.y Forms

Bibliography
Chapter One
INTRODUCTION

It is a question of some interest whether all clauses require subjects. On the face of things, the answer seems to be 'no'. Consider the Hebrew sentences in (1): All four are perfectly acceptable, yet not one of them displays what we would typically call a subject.

(1) a. kar
cold
'its cold'

b. meSa'amem likro 'iton
boring to read paper
'it is boring to read the newspaper'

c. yeS le-Gavriela natul
is to-Gavriela cat
'Gavriela has a cat'

d. hodi'u 'al kax ba-radio
announced+3pl. about that on-the-radio
'this was announced on the radio'

As a first step, two notions of 'subject' must be distinguished. First, there is a semantic notion of subject. In (2a), for example, the NP Bill is the semantic subject of the sentence. It refers to the agent who ate the cake. In (2b), Bill is still the semantic subject, even though it appears in a different position from the one it occupied in (2a).

(2) a. Bill ate the cake
b. the cake was eaten by Bill

The second notion of subject, and the one which is central to this work, is the syntactic or structural one. Although (2a) and (2b) are semantically equivalent (i.e. if one is true the other must be true,) they have a different structure. In (2a), the subject position is occupied by the NP Bill, which happens to also be the semantic subject of the sentence. In (2b), however, the subject position is occupied by the semantic object of the sentence, the NP the cake.

The claim which will be developed in the following pages can be stated as in (3).

(3) While not all sentences have semantic subjects, they all have syntactic subjects.

The notion of syntactic subject that will be developed is a structural one. It will be argued that the sentences in (1) all have a subject position, which happens to be unexpressed phonologically. Some languages, like Hebrew, admit phonologically unexpressed (i.e., null) subjects; others, like English do not. Thus, the English equivalents for the sentences in (1a, b, d), (given in the glosses), all mark the subject position with a pleonastic element, it. The same difference can be seen in (4) below, where English posits there in a position which is null in Hebrew.

(4) a. hig'i a is mi-Africa
    arrived man from-Africa
    'there arrived a man from Africa'

b. parac viku'ax so'er
One way (4) differs from (1) above is in that there is NP in the sentence, in addition to the pleonastic formative, (null or overt,) which we can take to be the clausal subject. In fact, the sentences in (4) freely vary with those of (5), which manifest a subject. The subject in (4) can be said to be 'displaced'.

(5) a. iS higi'a mi-Africa  
    *man arrived from-Africa*  
    'a man arrived from Africa'

    b. viku'ax so'er parac  
    *debate lively erupted*  
    'a lively debate erupted'

The second main question which will be explored in this work can be stated as in (6).

(6) What are the conditions under which subjects may appear in a 'displaced' position?

To illustrate why this question is important, consider the fact that the sentences in (8) are only marginally acceptable as variants of those in (7), in contrast to the free variation among (5) and (6) above. The sentences in (8) belong to a more literary, 'Biblical' register than the fully colloquial sentences of (4).

(7) a. Gavriella nosa'at be-trempim  
    *Gavriella rides in hitches*  
    'Gavriella hitchhikes'
The third issue dealt with in the course of this work has to do with the placement of the 'displaced' subjects. Some postverbal subjects will be shown to occupy the position of the direct object, (i.e, the 'subjects' of unaccusative verbs), while others, I will argue, are adjoined to VP.

The thesis is confounded with a study of existential and possessive constructions in Hebrew, which illustrate many of the points studied in earlier chapters.

This dissertation is written in the theoretical paradigm of 'Government and Binding Theory'. It presupposes familiarity with the work of Chomsky (1981), (1982), (1986a), (1986b) and the related literature. In particular, I will begin by assuming a theory of chains, based largely on the discussion in Chomsky (1986a) (1986b) and I will introduce modifications as I proceed. I
assume that links in a chain must meet the 'antecedent government' part of the ECP, (9).

(9) In a chain $C = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$, $\alpha_i$ must antecedent-govern $\alpha_{i-1}$ for all $\alpha_i$

Crucial to much of the discussion in this work is the Chain Condition, (10), which is a modification of Chomsky's condition (170), (1986a, 137).

(10) If $C = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ is a maximal chain, then $\alpha_i$ is in a Case-marked position.

One corollary to the Chain Condition is condition (11).

(11) If $C = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ is a maximal chain, then $\alpha_n$ occupies its unique $\theta$-position and $\alpha_i$ its unique Case-marked position.

The import of (11) is that a chain can have only one Case-marked position.

This latter point will come to play a significant role especially in the discussions in Chapters two and three.

Other theoretical notions will be introduced in the course of the presentation.
Chapter 2: EXPLETIVES

2.1 Introduction

One way of posing the question of whether all clauses have subjects is to inquire into the role and function of pleonastic formatives such as it and there in English. Since these elements are apparently semantically empty, it is a question of some interest what syntactic function they play.

One difference between Hebrew and English is that Hebrew lacks such formatives. The absence or rarity of overt pleonastics seems to be a general property of Null Subject languages, (but see Appendix to this chapter.)

Whereas the grammar of English requires it and there in (1), the corresponding structures in Hebrew in (2) are well-formed without them.

(1) a. there arrived a train
    b. it is clear that Reagan wants war

(2) a. higi’a rakevet
    
    arrived train

    b. barur Se-Reagan roce milxama
    
    clear that-R. wants war

One of the conclusions of this dissertation is that the empty subject position in (2) is, in fact, filled by a syntactically active, albeit phonetically null element. Hebrew will be shown to be just like English in having pleonastic elements which fill the clausal subject position. The difference between the two languages has to do with an independent factor, namely, the settings on
the parameters which govern the acceptability of phonetically null subjects. Hebrew is a 'null subject language'; English is not.

The empirical evidence supporting this claim will be laid out in Ch. 5 and will be embedded in a discussion of the pro module. But even granted this conclusion, it is still a mystery why grammars of natural language manifest pleonastics at all. An adequate theory of universal grammar ought to incorporate an analysis of pleonastics, explicating their role in the formation of grammatical sentences. And it is to that discussion that I now turn.

First, I argue that there is no Case theoretic reason to posit expletives in the subject position of clauses. I claim that Case transmission is not a viable means of satisfying the Case Filter. In 2.3, I proceed to derive the presence of expletives from the requirement that clauses have subjects. Expletives are viewed as 'place holders' for displaced subjects. Section 2.4 develops Chomsky's (1986b) idea that expletives are replaced in LF by the arguments whose place they fill at S-structure. I consider various problems that arise in the adoption of the Expletive Replacement Hypothesis, (ERH). Section 2.6 discusses there replacement in English, concluding that in there...be sentences, the expletive is replaced, at LF, by the entire small clause complement of be and not by the postverbal NP. I then discuss impersonal passives in Hebrew, which exemplify a case of expletive replacement by a PP. Sections 2.8, 2.9 are devoted to a treatment of the binding relationship in expletive argument pairs and of the number agreement problem raised by the earlier proposal on there replacement. The last section of Chapter 2 deals with the replacement of it in LF.
2.2 Against Case Transmission

One common view is that expletives are required in order to pick up Case which cannot be directly assigned to a postverbal NP. According to this theory, the role of expletives is to transmit Case. This position is explicitly defended in Burzio (1985), Chomsky (1981), and assumed in much other work.

One problem that this approach has had to contend with is that there are expletive argument pairs where no Case transmission seems to be going on. If one accepts the view that S' clauses may not have Case (Stowell (1981)), for example, then the pleonastic it in (3a) must be licensed by some other principle. Similarly, if the oblique argument of impersonal passives such as (3b) is Case marked directly by the preposition sur, then no transmission needs to take place and the role of the expletive as 'Case transmitter' is redundant. A justification for the obligatoriness of the expletives in (3), it seems, must be sought outside Case theory.

(3) a. it seems that John is intelligent

b. il a été discuté sur cette question

---

In the works cited, the association of expletives and extraposed sentential subjects follows from the Chain Condition, (alias 'visibility hypothesis') which requires that θ-chains be headed by a Case marked element. What is relevant for the discussion here is that the expletive associated with an extraposed sentential complement is not, strictly speaking, needed to transmit Case. More on Case theory in Ch.3. See also Davis (1986) for a discussion of the relationship between expletives and extraposed sentential subjects.
Another problem, of a more conceptual nature, is that the notion of Case transmission is inconsistent with the view that Case is assigned under government, that is, under a well defined structural configuration. This is so because the element assigning Case to the expletive does not govern the NP to which Case is transmitted. To avoid the inconsistency, one must stipulate that Case may be assigned by transmission but is checked under government, (Chomsky (1981).) But this raises the question of why Case assignment is not completely free, letting the checking mechanism do the work of constraining overgeneration.

The hypothesis I will develop in this section will, I hope, share none of these difficulties. The idea that I want to defend is that there is no Case transmission at all. In the ensuing discussion, I will presuppose familiarity with the 'Case transmission' literature and will make references to it insofar as those are necessary to elucidate specific points in the argument.

The main claim, then, is that expletives are not required for Case transmission and that one must look outside of Case theory for a justification for their presence. Case, I argue, is always assigned directly and locally, in the sense that it cannot be assigned to one element and then transmitted to another element.2

One frequently noted problem for the Case transmission theory is exemplified in (4)-(6)3

---

2 This idea comes directly from work of Pollock (1981), (1983) and from recent research of H. Lasnik and A. Belletti, on whose work I draw heavily in the next few pages.

3 e.g. Burzio ch.2, Safir (1985: 150-152)
(4)  a. *there is likely a man to be in the room  
    b. *there seems a man to be in the room

(5)  *sembrano tre ragazzi essere arrivati           (Belletti (1987))

(6)  *John expects there to appear a bear to be in the square  (Safir  
     compare: John expects her to leave (1985))

The question here is why Case inheritance fails. In (4), (5), and (6), the NP's
a man, tre ragazzi, and a bear appear in non Case positions: In the
subject position of nonfinite verbs. In all three sentences, however, the
expletive, there in (4) and (6), pro in (5) are in Case marked positions.
This is evidenced by the fact that those positions can be landing sites for NP
movement, in (7) and (8), and by the possibility of Exceptional Case Marking
by expect in (9). Yet all the sentences in (4)-(6) are unacceptable.

(7)  a. a man is likely to be in the room  
    b. a man seems to be in the room

(8)  tre ragazzi sembrano essere arrivati

(9)  John expects a bear to appear to be in the square

One could argue (following Burzo) that Case inheritance is clause-bound, so
that no transmission can take place in (4)-(6), because the postverbal NP is
separated from the expletive by a clause boundary. But the sentences in
(10)-(12) show that clauseboundedness plays no role here. (10)-(12) differ
minimally from (4)-(6) in that the postverbal NP is not in the subject position of the embedded infinitival but appears to the right of the embedded verb.

(10) a. there is likely to be a man in the room
    b. there seems to be a man in the room

(11) sembrano essere arrivati tre ragazzi

(12) John expects there to appear to be a bear in the square

Noting the facts in (10), Burzio claims that the English verb 'be' is exempt from the restriction on the clause-boundedness of Case inheritance.\(^4\) However, even such a modification does not account for the wellformedness of (11), or of (13) below, since the postverbal NP is licit after a verb other than be, (Safir, op cit.: 151.)

(13) there seem to exist several solutions

Putting the issue in structural terms, then, why is a representation like

(14a) illformed while (14b) is wellformed?

\(^4\) Note that one could argue that the postverbal NP in (10)-(12) receives its Case by transmission from the trace of the raised expletive, thus maintaining the clauseboundedness of Case transmission. Yet if an expletive can receive Case in situ, as subject of to be and essere it is not clear what requirement would compel it to raise to the subject position of e.g., sembrare in the first place.

An alternative, and perhaps a more natural one, would be to allow only clause-bounded Case transmission, but from a Case-headed, (i.e., wellformed) chain. Thus, in (10a), Case is transmitted from the chain (there, t) to a man.
(14) a. \[\text{expletive} V [S \ NP \ V] \]

b. \[\text{expletive}_l \ V [S \ t \ V \ NP] \]

If Case inheritance were disallowed, the illformedness of (14a) would be explained as a Case Filter violation. In similar terms, the wellformedness of (14b) is due to the fact that when the NP appears to the right of the verb, it can be assigned Case. Let us hypothesize, then, that the embedded V in (14b) is a Case assigner.

An argument to the effect that unaccusative verbs Case mark their objects is made in Belletti (1987).

**Belletti (1987)**

Belletti's proposal is that unaccusative and passive verbs assign an inherent, partitive Case to their complements and that the definiteness effect associated with postverbal subjects of such verbs follows from a semantic incompatibility of 'strong' NP's with partitive Case. There are languages, e.g., Finnish, where partitive Case is morphologically represented; Belletti claims that even in languages where there is no overt morphological partitive Case, it is nevertheless assigned, albeit abstractly.

Belletti further assumes that partitive Case is sufficient to satisfy the Case Filter. Thus, under her assumptions, the postverbal NP un uomo in (15a), or 'a man' in (15b), is directly Case-marked partitive. There is no need, in her
system, for Case inheritance from a preverbal expletive, since the postverbal NP can acquire Case in-situ.

(15)  
  a. arriva un uomo  
  b. there arrived a man

An inherent Case differs from structural Case is that it 'inheres' in the lexical entry of a verb rather than being assigned configurationally. Chomsky (1986a) proposes that inherent Case is assigned together with a θ-role. If so, argues Belletti, it is predicted that partitive Case will be blocked from an NP which is not θ-marked by the Case assigning verb. In the sentences in (4)-(6) above, the problematic NP is the subject of an embedded sentence. As such, it is not θ-marked by the governing verb. Even if it is assumed that seem, sembrare, likely, appear are unaccusative predicates, (an assumption which is supported, at least w.r.t to the Italian sembrare, by the fact that it takes the auxiliary essere and not avere, a standard diagnostic for unaccusativity in that language,) partitive Case will be blocked since these predicates do not θ-mark the subject of their sentential complements. The illformedness of (4)-(6) shows that these NP's can only receive Case from their governing verbs. If they could, alternatively, be Case marked by inheritance from the expletive, their illformedness would remain unexplained.

5 The assignment of nominative Case directly from INFL to a VP-internal subject is ruled out by the Minimality Condition since the VP-internal subject is 'shielded' by V from government by an element external to VP.
Thus, Belletti's argument has the consequence not only that direct partitive Case by the governing verb is the only Case that can be assigned to the objects of unaccusative verbs, but that that is the only way those NP's can be assigned Case. Due to its inherent nature, partitive Case is predicted never to be assigned across clause boundaries, through exceptional Case marking.

Partitive Case, however, is optionally assigned. For if it were obligatory, fronting the object into subject position would not alter the definiteness effect and (16b) should be as ungrammatical as (16a). the fact that (16b) is acceptable shows that partitive Case is not assigned.

(16)  a. *there is the man in the room

       b. the man is in the room

Since the verbs in question cannot assign any other Case (specifically, they are not assigners of structural accusative Case), suspension of Case assignment compels the postverbal NP to move into a Case position, as in (17)-(19) below. Thus, the import of Raising as a last resort operation is maintained in this system: Raising will only take place when partitive Case is suspended.

(17)  a. a man is likely to be in the room

       b. a man seems to be in the room

(18) tre ragazzi sembrano essere arrivati

(19) John expects a bear to appear to be in the square
Since the definiteness effect characterizes the objects of English be and exist, as well as the past participle arrivati, it may be assumed that they are all assigners of partitive Case.

(20) a. *there is the man in the room
   (compare: there is a man in the room)

   b. *there exists every unicorn
   (compare: there exist some unicorns)

   c. *sembrano essere arrivati gli uomini della finestra
   (compare (11) above)

To conclude, Belletti's theory provides an explanation for the representations in (14). (14a) is illformed because partitive Case cannot be assigned across a
clausal boundary; (14b) is well-formed because the embedded V can directly Case mark NP. ⁶

Case Adjacency

Stowell (1981) argues that objects which are directly Case marked by a governing verb must be adjacent to it. This accounts for the contrasts between (21a-d) and (21e-f), (22a,b) and (22c) and (23a) and (23b).

(21) a. Paul quickly opened [the door]
   b. Jenny quietly read [her book]
   c. Paul opened [the door] quickly
   d. Jenny read [her book] quietly
   e. *Paul opened quickly [the door]
   f. *Jenny read quietly [her book]

Pollock (1981), (1983) argues that unaccusative verbs and passive participles Case mark their objects. He shows that such an assumption can account for the contrast between verbs and adjectives in il impersonal constructions.

(i) a. il est arrivé un homme
   b. il a été tué un homme
   c. *il était stupide un homme

True adjectives differ from verbs in their incapacity to assign Case. See also Davis (1984) for arguments that Case is assigned directly in these sentences.

Note that as things now stand, not all of Burzio's arguments have been answered, e.g., it is not clear from the discussion above why expletives need to be in Case-marked positions. I turn to this question in detail in Ch. 3 below.
(22)  a. John often sees Mary
     b. John sees Mary often
     c. *John sees often Mary

(23)  a. Bill saw a movie yesterday
     b. *Bill saw yesterday a movie

If the Case filter could be satisfied by transmitting Case to the postverbal NP from there, the lack of adjacency of this NP to its governing verb ought to be irrelevant. Yet the adjacency violations illustrated in (21)-(23) repeat themselves in the paradigm in (24)-(27) below, as argued by Lasnik (1987) (and putting aside the parenthetical reading of the adverbials.)

(24)  a. there quietly arose a terrible storm
     b. there quickly developed an argument

(25)  a. there arose a terrible storm quietly
     b. there developed an argument quickly

(26)  a. *there arose quietly a terrible storm
     b. *there developed quickly an argument

(27)  a. there often hangs a coat here
     b. *there hangs often a coat here
Again, one could maintain the view that Case is transmitted by *there* but must be realized under adjacency but as far as I can tell, that is tantamount
to saying that Case is assigned by the verb under adjacency and that *there*
is doing no Case theoretic work.\(^7\)

---

\(^7\) Noam Chomsky (p.c) notes that (26a,b), (27b) are not as bad as they ought to be given the analysis in the text. He also cites (i) which is at least as good as (ii).

(i) there arrived yesterday a strange letter
(ii) there arrived a strange letter yesterday

It seems to me, however, that (i) as well as (26a,b), (27b) involve 'Heavy NP shift' of the indefinite NP, accounting for their marginal, as opposed to ungrammatical status. It is a well known fact that indefinite NP's may undergo HNPS while definite 'non-heavy' ones may not. (Rochemont (1978), Stowell (1981).) Thus, for example, while (iv) is a possible alternant for (iii) (vi) does not alternate with (v). (Thanks to H. Lasnik for discussing this point with me.)

(iii) I gave a letter to him
(iv) I gave to him a letter
(v) I gave the letter to him
(vi) *I gave to him the letter

Given the option of HNPS in (26a,b), (27b), an adjacency violation is circumvented in e.g. (26a), by assigning the postverbal NP a terrible storm Case in a structure such as (25) and then moving the Case-marked NP to the right. Thus, the marginal, as opposed to ungrammatical status of (26a,b), (27b) is not a genuine problem for the analysis in the text.

A question which remains mysterious is why (26a) is still marginal to ungrammatical, in comparison with the fully acceptable (i). In other words why the 'escape route' offered by HNPS is not entirely acceptable in the former.
Lasnik (1987) discusses another set of examples, which make the same point as those of (4)-(6) and (10)-(12) above.

(28)  a. *I consider there a solution

b. I consider there to be a solution

If Case inheritance were a viable means for meeting the Case Filter, (28a) ought to be fine, since consider can (exceptionally) case mark the subject of its small clause complement (viz. 'I consider John to be intelligent') and a derivation in which there is first case marked by consider and then transmits case to the NP a solution should be valid. The unacceptability of (28a) militates against Case transmission. The acceptability of (28b) can be accounted for under the assumption that be is a Case assigner.

To conclude this section, I have tried to argue in favor of two claims:

(i) Case is always assigned directly and locally, never by transmission.

(ii) The copula be, like Belletti's unaccusative verbs, is a Case assigner.

Case Adjacency with 'be': The link with Romance

Note, in passing, that be does not give rise to adjacency violations, (Lasnik (1987)). This can be accounted for under the assumption that unlike the English verbs in e.g., (21)-(23), be can be moved into INFL in the syntax.6 A

---

possible representation for (29a) is, then, (29b), where the trace of the verb and the object NP are, indeed adjacent.

(29)  
   a. there is often a terrible storm here  
   b. there \[I_t\text{-is [VP}\text{often [V-t, a terrible storm here]]}\]

Note that in order for (29b) to be acceptable \text{w.r.t.} Case theory, we must make the auxiliary assumption that the trace of a verb retains the Case assigning property of its antecedent. This is argued for explicitly in Torrego (1984). We can generalize her argument and assume what, in any event, seems like the null hypothesis, namely, that traces retain all the features of their antecedent except those that are intrinsically tied up with phonetic content.) This means that even though is is moved into INFL, it's trace retains the capacity to assign Case to the postverbal NP.

Furthermore, the ungrammaticality of (30a) is due to the fact that both has and the participle been cannot both move into INFL at S-structure. Thus, the representation of (30a) must be (31b), where the adjacency problem is retained.

(30)  
   a. *there has been often a terrible storm here  
   b. there \[I_t\text{-has [VP}\text{been often a terrible storm here]]}\]

The claim that movement of V to INFL in the syntax around an adverb obscures what would otherwise be an adjacency violation can be carried over directly to Romance where the adjacency condition, in the general case, does not seem to hold. The possibility of raising a verb in to INFL around a
V' adverb was first made in Emonds (1979) and has recently been pursued in Pollock (GLOW 1987).

To take one example, the grammaticality of (31a) (Rizzi 1986: P. 531) which should be contrasted with the unacceptable (22c) above can be represented at S-structure as (31b).

\[(31)\]

\[a. \text{ Gianni vede spesso Maria} \]
\[\text{Gianni sees often Maria} \]

\[b. \text{ Gianni [\text{vede} +\text{INFL} [\text{VP [\text{spesso} [\text{t} \text{v Maria}]]]]]} \]

If this approach is correct then Case adjacency holds in Italian just as it does in English.

Note, now, that (32) is acceptable, contrasting minimally with the unacceptable English (30).

\[(32)\]

[\text{ha entrato lentamente un uomo dalla finestra}]
\[\text{has entered slowly a man through the window} \]

What needs to be assumed here is that the past participle entrato can move into INFL before S-structure and occupy it together with the auxiliary ha, an option which is unavailable in English. In Ch.4, we argue- for an equivalent case in Spanish- that the participle can incorporate with the auxiliary, in the sense of Baker (1985).
2.3 The Subject Position

If expletives do not transmit Case to a postverbal NP, we must look outside of Case theory for an explanation of their obligatory presence. Consider, now, the hypothesis that expletives are place fillers for postverbal (i.e., 'displaced') subjects and that there is some grammatical principle that requires that clauses have subjects.

Such a principle has appeared under different names in the course of the development of generative grammar and is espoused by virtually all contemporary generative theories. Both Relational Grammar and GB theory possess such a principle: The 'Final 1 Law' and the 'Extended Projection Principle'. Both amount to the stipulation that,

(33) **Subject Stipulation**

> Every clause must have a subject

There are a number of ways to conceptualize (33). Chomsky (1982), for example, links it to the projection principle. Yet there is something misleading, it seems to me, in such a linkage. The projection principle projects lexical information, e.g. a thematic array, onto a structure. For example, if a verb has a 0-marked object, an object position will be generated and when a verb does not have a 0-marked object, an object position will not be generated. However, a subject position is always generated, even when it is non-thematic, Chomsky (1981:26). It is precisely when the subject position is non-thematic that it is filled by an expletive. If (33) is conceptually linked to the Projection Principle, we cannot appeal to it for an explanation for why there are expletives.
The theme I would like to pursue is that (33) is a purely structural principle, i.e., Chomsky's (1981) Principle P. It is a stipulation to the effect that clauses must have a structural subject position which I take to be the SPEC of IP in languages that can be characterized as configurational. (33) is thus, not a 'projection principle' in that it doesn't project a thematic array onto a phrase structure; rather it is a building block of that structure. Principle (33) is completely oblivious as to whether a verb has an external θ-role or not. It is precisely in regard to non-thematic subjects that the Subject Stipulation, (33), and the Projection Principle diverge: The Projection Principle will not project a syntactic position if there is no θ-role to be assigned to that position and consequently, a clausal subject will not be projected if there is no external θ-role. (33), on the other hand, requires that there be a subject position independently of whether the verb has a thematic subject or not.

When a verb does not assign an external θ-role, the subject position must still be represented and it is filled by a thematically-empty element, an expletive. The expletive may be null, as in Italian or overt, as in English, depending on the setting of the parameters of the pro-module.

There have been a number of attempts to derive the stipulation that clauses have subjects from more general principles, e.g., the arguments of Rothstein (1983) to the effect that (33) derives from a principle of predication which requires that every predicate have a subject.⁹ In this work, I will not dwell on the derivation of (33) and remain neutral on the question of whether it

⁹ See also Williams' (1980).
constitutes a primitive of grammatical theory or a derivable theorem thereof.\textsuperscript{10}

Let us, then, view the role of expletives as fillers for a thematically empty, yet obligatorily generated position and proceed to consider the hypothesis made in Chomsky (1986) to the effect that expletives are replaced, at LF, by the arguments with which they are coindexed.

2.4 Expletive Replacement

The import of the Expletive Replacement Hypothesis, (ERH) is that even if a verb does not have an external argument, but only an internal one, that argument is obligatorily 'externalized', i.e. fronted to the subject position in LF.

Chomsky himself proposes that expletive replacement is an LF analogue for Raising at S-structure. Such a view is false, I believe, under a 'narrow' view of Raising, i.e. as a means for a non Case marked NP to get Case but true under a broader conception of Raising as a 'last resort operation'. Let us clarify this matter.

\textsuperscript{10} Note that the claim that (33) is a primitive does not entail the commitment to the claim that grammatical relations such as 'subject of' are primitive. Under the interpretation given to it in this work, (33) may be construed as a primitive of phrase structure, as the stipulation that IP must have a specifier position. Needless to say, this is problematic for conceptions of a category-neutral base, since reference is explicitly made to the specifier of a specific category, i.e. IP.
In 2.2 above we showed that expletives do not transmit Case, that they are redundant from the point of view of Case theory. A postverbal NP such as a man in (34) below can be Case marked partitive in situ and does not need to be fronted in order to receive Case.

(34) there arrived three trains

If Raising is seen only as a way of satisfying the Case Filter then the replacement of there with three trains in LF is not a subcase of Raising. Suppose, however, that we construe Raising more broadly, as a subcase of move-a which is not tied to any particular module and can be utilized by the grammar to meet any requirement. Typically, it is employed as a 'last resort' operation for Case assignment, (at S-structure,) but it can also be used to replace an expletive in LF if such a a replacement is deemed necessary by some principle or another. Thus, Raising at S-structure is motivated by different principles than Raising in LF: In the former, it is Case-driven while in the latter, it is motivated by expletive replacement.11

Expletive replacement is, thus, quite similar to Raising or passive: All three operations create A-chains, Raising and passive at S-structure, expletive replacement in LF.

Deriving Expletive Replacement: Full Interpretation

---

11 This distinction is not a principled one. One could argue that extraposed sentential subjects, while resistant to Case at S-structure, nevertheless require Case in LF and must replace an expletive in order to meet the Chain Condition. See Ch. 3 for an elaboration of this idea. There, I argue that only overt NP's need Case at S-structure but all A-chains must be headed by a Case marked element in LF.
Chomsky (1986a) has proposed that universal grammar incorporates a principle of 'Full Interpretation'. Taken in its strongest form, FI implies that at the levels of LF and PF, which constitute the interface of grammar with systems of language use, every element must be assigned an appropriate interpretation. Elements may not be simply disregarded as notational or representational redundancies.

Putting aside the application of FI to PF representations, consider the restrictions that FI imposes on LF. FI does not tolerate elements in LF representation which play no role in semantic interpretation. Conceivably, then, complementizers may be deleted in LF, and perhaps must be so deleted if they are semantically empty. Obviously, this has consequences for the notion of recoverability of deletion but one can imagine that recoverability of deletion does not apply at LF to elements which are not assigned an interpretation.

Consider the status of expletives. Since they bear no interpretation, but are merely place holders, they must be eliminated in LF. Unlike complementizers, however, expletives may not be simply deleted. This is so because their presence is required by (33), which we can take to be an independent 'licensing mechanism' at LF. Thus, expletives must be Ø5 eliminated -by FI- but the position they occupy must be represented - by (33). This tension is resolved by replacing the expletive with an argument. Adjuncts cannot replace an expletive since the specifier of S- the subject position- is an A-position from which adjuncts are excluded. Seen in this
form, expletive replacement is a 'last resort' operation induced by the dual requirements of FI and (33).

The direct consequence of expletive replacement is that,

\[(35)\quad \text{At LF, all clauses have subjects which bear } \theta\text{-roles.}\]

Since expletives must be replaced by arguments at LF, it follows that there are no LF representations with nonthematic subjects. This corollary will be shown to play a significant role in the theory of null subjects that will be developed in Ch. 5. There, I will argue that the licensing principles which comprise the pro module treat on par null subjects which are argumental and null expletives. This rather surprising result is rendered more plausible if the pro module is sensitive to LF representations and if (35) is, indeed, characteristic of LF representations.\(^{12}\)

2.5 What Is An Expletive Replaced By: Romance Free Inversion?

\(^{12}\) Reuland (1983) deduces what amounts to expletive replacement from an interpretation of the Subject Stipulation which has (35) built into it. Chomsky's version assumes FI and a purely structural version of the Subject Stipulation.

On conceptual grounds, it seems to me that Chomsky's version is preferable in that it maintains an impoverished Subject Stipulation and derives Expletive Replacement from a more general principle, FI, which has broader explanatory power.
In a number of Romance languages, e.g., Spanish, subjects of intransitive verbs can either precede or follow the verb. Thus, (36a) and (37a) as well as (36b), (37b) are possible:

(36) a. llego Juan  
\hspace{1cm} arrived Juan

b. Juan llego

(37) a. llamo Maria  
\hspace{1cm} telephoned Maria

b. Maria llamo

It is generally assumed that the 'unmarked' constituent order is subject-verb and the reverse order is obtained through a process called 'free inversion'. Although we shall discuss inversion at greater length in Ch.4, let us, for now, assume the familiar hypotheses on inversion. Thus, it has been argued that the postverbal subject of an unaccusative verb like llegar occupies the position of the direct object while the postverbal subject of llamar is adjoined to VP.\textsuperscript{13} As such, the postverbal subject in neither sentence satisfies the Subject Stipulation, since, in neither case is the subject SPEC of IP. The Subject Stipulation, in the format given to it in (33) compels us to postulate a null subject in (36),(37).\textsuperscript{14}

\textsuperscript{13} See, e.g. Burzio (1985), Jaeggli (1982) and much other work.

\textsuperscript{14} The existence of null expletives in inversion constructions has been proposed for a number of languages. For more extensive discussion see ahead and also Rizzi (1986), Safir (1985), Pollock (1983), Platzack (1985), among others. This view has been contested in a number of works, e.g. Borer (1986), Travis (1984), Adams (1987), Zagona (1982).
Being expletive, the null subject of (36), (37) is subject to replacement at LF. We assume that in LF the postverbal subject itself replaces the null expletive.

Let us turn now to a difficulty that this proposal encounters. Rizzi (1982) argues that the complementizer/trace effect is suspended in null subject languages like Spanish or Italian, an observation due originally to Perlmutter (1971), because a subject can be postposed and adjoined to VP and then extracted from this postposed position where it is presumably properly governed (by V or by the null subject.) The derivation of (38a) from (38b) is schematically represented in (38c).

(38) a. chi credi che verrà
    who believes that will come

  b. credi che qui verrà

  c. [COMP chi₁] credi [S: che t₁ verrà t₁]

Modifying somewhat Rizzi's original assumptions, we can say that the null subject of verrà in (38c) is a null expletive pro, rather than a trace, or PRO, since a trace in the subject position is itself not properly governed and violates the ECP, (and PRO is governed.\textsuperscript{15}) Suppose, then, that (38c) is actually (39).

\textsuperscript{15} This depends on one's assumptions about affix hopping. In Chomsky (1981) the null subject is, in fact, PRO. The LGB account rests crucially on movement of AGR to V in the syntax eliminating a potential governor for PRO. This proposal is untenable in a theory that accounts for the amalgamation of V and AGR by movement of V to INFL. For evidence that this latter approach is, in fact, correct, see ahead, pp. 174 - 145.
(39) \[\text{CP chi, credi [CP che pro, verrà t,]}\]

Since pro is not subject to the ECP (being a pronominal e.c.), the ECP problem that (38c) presents is avoided. I am assuming, then, that rightwards movement of the subject can leave an empty category pro.\(^{16}\)

Consider, now, the LF representation of (39). pro, being expletive, must be replaced and the only potential replacement is the trace of the extracted wh-word chi. Suppose, then, that ti replaces pro, giving (40).

(40) \[\text{CP chi, credi [CP che ti, verrà ti]}\]

(40), however, seems identical to (38c) which, we argued, was illformed w.r.t to the ECP. We seem, then, to be in a quandary: By the null hypothesis on expletive replacement, pro can be replaced by traces as well as by overt NP's, yet such an operation would seem to recreate an ECP violation that the postverbal extraction of chi was designed to circumvent.

There is, however, a crucial difference in the way (40) and (38c) are derived.\(^{17}\) In the latter, a trace in the subject position cannot be properly governed; in the former, a trace which is in a properly governed position at

\(^{16}\) This is conceptually distinct from a 'functional' determination of e.c.'s, as in e.g., Chomsky (1981, ch. 6) (1982), Bouchard (1982), Sportiche (1983), but rather entails the hypothesis that empty categories can take on any features they please, subject to other constraints, as discussed in Brody (1984). The option of leaving a pro e.c. is possible in Italian due to positive setting of the null subject parameter in Italian and impossible in English because the grammar of English does not tolerate null subject pro's.

\(^{17}\) I am indebted to M. Browning for an extremely illuminating discussion of this matter. Some of these issues are discussed in Browning (1987).
S-structure is moved into a position which is not properly governed in LF. Under Lasnik and Saito's (L&S) (1986) conceptualization of the ECP, which is adopted in this work, it is assumed that the ECP is a filter which is sensitive to the feature [+ -γ]. Let us also make explicit the null hypothesis about [γ] marking, namely, that it can apply anywhere, or, perhaps more conservatively, anywhere within the component in which the ECP is formed, i.e. S-structure or LF. Following L&S, suppose that once [γ]-marked, the status of an element is fixed w.r.t the ECP: If it has been [γ]-marked [-], movement into a properly governed position will not render it [+γ]. Conversely, if an element is marked [+γ], it may move to a non properly governed position without losing this value.

Seen in these terms, the difference between (38c) and (40) is clear: (40) is derived by marking the [+γ] in its VP-adjoined position at S-structure and then moving it to replace pro in LF. This is possible in Italian because of the positive setting of the null subject parameter. (Recall that pro, by definition, is not subject to the ECP.) In the English equivalent of (38a), the null category in [SPEC/IP] cannot be pro but only trace, since pro is not licensed in English. It is thus marked [-γ] and consequently ruled out by the ECP.

2.6 THERE Replacement

Letting [γ] marking be completely free will allow an empty category which would otherwise be assigned [-γ] at S-structure to postpone it’s [γ] marking to LF. Restricting it to apply within the component in which it is formed would disallow precisely that. The correct formulation of [γ]-marking is ultimately an empirical question which I will not attempt to resolve in this work.
The Problem

I have, until now, been assuming that expletives are replaced by their coindexed arguments. But it is far from obvious what is the actual coindexed argument. What actually does replace an expletive? Insofar as a postverbal NP can satisfy the Case Filter with inherent Case in situ, it does not need to move into a Case-marked position. Consequently, Case theory does not 'force' a postverbal NP to undergo LF expletive replacement or, what would amount to the same thing, LF Raising.

But there are more substantial differences between there sentences, in particular, the there...be variety, and their raising or passive counterparts, differences which could be accounted for rather straightforwardly if, in fact, there was not replacable by the postverbal NP in LF. Specifically, there sentences do not have the same meaning as their NP-movement variants.

Consider, first, the fact, noted in Williams (1984), that the postverbal subject of the there sentence in (41a), someone, cannot take wide scope over the modal must. (41a) cannot be represented as (41b), but only as (41c).

(41) a. there must be someone in the house
   b. *[someone\textsubscript{1} [must be t\textsubscript{1} in the house]]
   c. [must [someone\textsubscript{1} [t\textsubscript{1} be in the house]]]

Sentence (42a), however, is ambiguous, it can be represented either as (42b) or as (42c).
(42)  

a. someone must be in the house  
b. [someone₁ [must be t₁ in the house]]  
c. [must [someone₁ [t₁ be in the house]]]

If there were replaced by someone in LF, it is not clear how (41b) could be blocked.

Safir (1985) discusses a related fact w.r.t the scope of negation. He notes that in (43a), the NP many men is obligatorily under the scope of the negation, while only optionally so in (43b).

(43)  
a. there aren't many men sick  
b. many men aren't sick

(43a) can be paraphrased only as (44a), while (43b) admits of both the paraphrases (44a) and (44b), although it is perhaps more naturally interpreted as (44b).

(44)  
a. It is not the case that many men are sick  
b. there are many men such that they are not sick

As before, if many men were to replace the expletive in LF, it is not obvious how to prevent it from taking wide scope over the clause.

A third related problem (again from Safir,) is exemplified in (45). The embedded postverbal subject many ships in (45a) cannot have scope
outside of the clause containing the verb which governs it, it cannot have the interpretation (46a), but only (46b). Once again, (45b) is ambiguous.

(45)  a. there seem to be many ships in the harbor  
      b. many ships seem to be in the harbor

(46)  a. for many x, x a ship, [there seem to be x in the harbor]  
      b. it seems that for many x, x a ship, [x are in the harbor]

If (45a) were represented at LF in a manner identical to (45b), it should mean the same thing as (45b). Evidently it doesn't.

**THERE Replacement: The Proposal**

The hypothesis I wish to consider is that there in the examples above is not replaced by the postverbal NP but rather by the entire small clause complement of be. The post-replacement representations of (41a), (43a), (45a) will, then, be,

(47)  a. [someone in the house]ₙ must be t₁ 
      b. [many men sick]ₙ aren't t₁ 
      c. [many ships in the harbor]ₙ seem tₔ to be t₁

(47a-c) are just the right structures for ruling out wide scope reading for the NP's **someone, many men, many ships**. Consider (48):

(48)  a. **someoneₙ [IP [SC tₔ in the house]ₙ must be t₁]**
b. many men, \{IP \{SC t_i sick \} aren't t_i\}

c. many ships, \{IP \{SC t_i in the harbor \} seem t_i to be t_i\}

The SC in the subject position in (48) is not L-marked, hence a blocking category and a barrier. Furthermore, S is a barrier, by inheritance from SC. Be the categorial features of the small clause what they may, it seems reasonable to consider it to be a maximal category. Furthermore, it is an argument. As such, it doesn't tolerate adjunction. The conclusion is that \( t_i \) in (48a-c) is marked [-γ] and the structure is out by the ECP.

Yet as it stands, this proposal has the undesirable consequence that e.g. many ships in (47c) cannot have any scope at all and must be interpreted referentially. This is so, since the quantifier may not be Quantifier-Raised and therefore is in an A-position in LF, a position from which it presumably cannot exercise scope. Yet surely (49a) is grammatical, even though no women may only be interpreted quantificationally; (49b) manifests scope ambiguities between some mice and every room and the pronoun his in (49c) can be interpreted as a bound pronoun.\(^{19}\)

(49)  a. there are no women in the room

b. there are some mice in every room

c. there is someone in his room

Clearly, then, the quantifiers in (49) must be able to exercise scope. One way of dealing with this problem is to assume, following Williams (1984), that

\(^{19}\) I am grateful to K. Johnson, R. Larson and B. Schein for discussion of this problem.
when a quantifier cannot move (because movement would violate some principle of syntax,) it is interpreted in situ and is assigned the narrowest possible scope.

We certainly do not want to claim that there can only be replaced with a small clause, because it can appear with verbs that do not take small clause complements at all, such as arise, arrive, occur (e.g., 'there arose a storm'.) In these latter formations, there is replaced by the postverbal NP itself, just as in the Romance cases examined on pp. above.

But if there can be replaced both by NP's and by (small) clauses, it is not clear what forces it to be replaced by a small clause in e.g., (41). Note that in these examples, it must be replaced by the small clause, for otherwise, the wrong scope facts would inevitably manifest themselves.

My proposal is that there-replacement is fundamentally free in that an expletive can be replaced by anything. Specifically, there are no categorial restrictions on there replacement. This means that there is no lexical restriction of the sort 'there is associated with category of type XP (X={N,I,...})'.

The second part of my proposal is that there are independent Case theoretic reasons for preventing the postverbal NP from replacing the expletive in there be sentences. Since the NP cannot move and the expletive must be replaced, the entire small clause is raised, as a last resort.

**THERE Replacement: The Argument**
In 2.2, we presented a brief summary of Belletti's (1987) account of the definiteness effect. Her main point, to recall, is that unaccusative verbs assign an inherent partitive Case to their objects and that partitivity is incompatible with definiteness. She explicitly argues that partitive Case is inherent and cannot be assigned to NP's which are not θ-marked by the Case assigning verb.

Such an account, however, forces one to abandon the view that the complement of be in English is a small clause. The reasoning is simple: The NP which follows be is subject to the Definiteness Effect, hence it is assigned partitive Case by be. This, in turn, implies that be θ-marks this NP. But if so, then the NP cannot be the subject of a small clause, which is not a θ-position w.r.t the governing verb. Thus, Belletti's account compels one to view the relation between be and the NP which follows it as one of direct θ-marking. One may then adopt Jenkins' (1972), Williams (1984) position that the complement of be is an NP, (50a), or, alternatively, that be subcategorizes both for an NP and locative PP, as in (50b). Stowell's small clause analysis, however, must be rejected.

(50) a. there is [NP a man in the room]

b. there is [NP a man] [PP in the room]
But then, if the complement of be is an NP and not a small clause, we again lose an explanation for the difference between there sentences and their Raising variants.²⁰

Let us maintain the small clause analysis and consider some adjustments in Belletti's theory of partitive Case.²¹ Specifically, let us adopt a suggestion of H. Lasnik's, (p.c.), that partitivity may be assigned either inherently or structurally. More generally, suppose that the choice of whether to assign partitive Case inherently or structurally is basically free. I diverge, therefore, from Belletti's assumption that partitive Case is strictly 0-related. Partitivity is clearly a semantic notion, yet if it were linked in the lexicon to a 0-role, its optionality would deserve explanation. It is not clear how a Case which is supposedly linked to a verb's 0-grid in the lexicon could be suspended when that 0-role is discharged.

An alternative is to view partitivity as a semantic property, a feature, if you will, which is assigned either along with a 0-role or structurally, under government. Yet allowing partitive Case to be assigned structurally would deprive us of the otherwise quite elegant explanation for the ungrammaticality of (4)-(6) above, which, as Belletti argues, are illformed.

²⁰ Unless one adopts Williams' (1984) proposal that there is a scope marker and not an expletive, but this is inconsistent with the approach to expletives pursued in this thesis.
²¹ In this, and the following, I am indebted to H. Lasnik for very helpful discussions.
precisely because the subject of the embedded clause is not \( \theta \)-related to the governing verb and can thus not be assigned partitive Case.\(^{22}\)

Let us assume, then, that the assignment of partitive Case structurally is a marked option of the verb be but does not extend to unaccusative predicates such as seem, appear, exist etc...

The exceptional property of be may, perhaps, stand at the root of the contrast in (51), which shows French être and Italian essere, in contrast to English be, do not admit of small clause complements in which passivization has taken place, (From Burzio (1985:155-157).)

(51) a. there were [many houses\(_1\) built \(t_1\) ]

b. *il a été [beaucoup d'immeubles\(_1\) construit \(t_1\) ]

c. *pro furono [molte case\(_1\) costruite \(t_1\) ]

\(^{22}\) Belletti uses the \( \theta \)-related nature of partitive Case also to account for the absence of bare plural NP's from the subject position of small clauses in Italian and Spanish. Regarding such sentences as (i), Belletti argues that studenti requires partitive Case. (overtly manifested, for example, in a Clitic Left Dislocated structure: 'lettere, non ne ho scritte' - 'letters, I of-them\(_{cl}\) didn't write'), yet it is barred from the subject position of a small clause and does not allow clitic climbing of ne, (ii).

(i) *Consideravo [\(sc\) studenti intelligenti]

   (compare: Consideravo [\(sc\) gli studenti intelligenti ])

(ii) *Studenti, ne consideravo [ - intelligenti]

The illformedness of both is accounted for if one assumes that the subject of a small clause cannot be assigned partitive Case, due to the inherent nature of such Case.
We can suppose that many houses can be passivized within the small clause and moved into the subject position of the small clause in order to be assigned structural partitive Case by be. The impossibility of such an operation in French/Italian is due to the fact that the equivalents of be in those languages lack the property of assigning partitive Case structurally. A sentence such as (51) is good in French/Italian when the subject of the embedded small clause appears post-verbally, as in (51′) and the expletive is raised into the matrix subject position.

(51′) a. il a été [t₁ construit beacoup d’immeubles]
   b. pro₁ furono [t₁ construite molte case]

Consider, now, a D-structure such as (52).

(52) e will be [SC many men in the room]

If partitive Case is not assigned, many men must move into e to get Case, deriving ‘many men will be in the room’. Suppose partitive Case is assigned. Since many men is inside a small clause, and thus cannot be θ-marked by be, partitive cannot be assigned at D-structure, so it is assigned structurally. there is inserted in the place of e, and ‘there will be many men in the room’ is derived.

At LF, there needs to be replaced. many men now bears structural Case and if it moves to replace there, the resulting chain will have two Cases, nominative at its head; structural partitive at its tail. Doubly Case marked
Chains violate the Chain Condition. Thus, we derive the consequence that \textit{there} cannot be replaced by \textit{many men}.

The principle of Full Interpretation requires that \textit{there} be eliminated and the Subject Stipulation prevents it from being deleted; hence it must be replaced. The only candidate for replacing it is the small clause and the desirable LF representation is derived.

Interestingly, the hypothesis that partitive Case may be assigned structurally affords us with a straightforward explanation for the illformedness of (53).

(53)  

\begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \text{ *three women in the room will be} \\
\text{b. } & \text{ *some women in the office seem to be}
\end{align*}

Consider the D-structures of (53), given in (54).

(54)  

\begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \text{ e will be } [\text{SC three women in the room}] \\
\text{b. } & \text{ e seem to be } [\text{SC some women in the office}]
\end{align*}

The question here is why the small clause complement of \textit{be} cannot be raised into the matrix position in toto. Suppose that partitive Case is suspended, as a prerequisite for Raising. Now, if the entire small clause is moved into the subject position, the small clause subject, \textit{three women in}
(53a), some women in (53b), will not be able to get nominative Case from the matrix INFL because it will be embedded within a clausal subject, a position not generally accessible to government by INFL.\textsuperscript{23}

On pp. above, I argued that traces of postverbal subjects in a null subject language like Italian replace an expletive in LF and that, in general, once a trace is [y]-marked, it may transport this feature along with it when moving into an otherwise non-properly governed position. The same logic can be carried over to (55a) below. Here, however, it is not the trace that replaces the expletive, but the entire small clause containing the trace. The relevant LF representation of (55a) is given in (55b).

(55) a. how many men were there in the room?

\textsuperscript{23} Note that this fails to account for the acceptability of sentences such as (i), (Akmajian (1977)).

(i) the moon over the mountains is a wonderful sight

Nor does the account in the text extend to (ii), since a god can be Case-marked in the subject position of be.

(ii) *a god is
b.

Since the trace \( t_j \) is marked \([+\gamma]\) at S-structure it can appear, in LF, in what would otherwise be a configuration of an ECP violation.\(^{24}\)

We can account for the contrast in (56), discussed by Safir (op.cit., p.159), in a similar vein.

(56) a. \([\text{how many men}]_i \text{ did John say that } [\_ \text{ there were } [SC \_ \text{ in the room}]]\)

b. \(*[\text{how many men}]_i \text{ did John say that } [\_ t'_i \text{ were } [SC \_ \text{ in the room}]]\)

(56a) is equivalent, in all relevant respects, to (55a) above: \( t_i \) is marked \([+\gamma]\) at S-structure and the entire small clause replaces there in LF. In (56b),

\(^{24}\) Assigning \([+\gamma]\) to the subject of a small clause complement must be allowed for since (i) is grammatical. We may suppose that since SC is not a barrier, since it is L-marked by consider, but only VP, there is an intermediate trace, \( t'_1 \) adjoined to VP, as in (ii) which can assign \([+\gamma]\) to \( t_i \).

(i) \text{ how many men did John consider foolish} \\
(ii) \([\text{how many men}]_i \text{ did } [IP \text{ John } [VP t'_1 [VP \text{ consider } [SC t_i \text{ foolish}]]]]}
however, the matrix clausal position is occupied by $t^*_1$, not by an expletive. Traces of NP’s to which a $\theta$-role is assigned, as opposed to expletives, are subject to LF interpretation and are, thus, not replaced. While $t_1$ in (56b) is marked [+y] at S-structure, as in (56a), $t^*_1$ in (56b) is marked [-y]. Since it occupies an A-position it cannot be deleted and violates the ECP. We have to also assume that $t^*_1$ cannot be reinterpreted as, e.g., pro in LF. The following restriction on empty categories achieves that result:

(57) Empty categories cannot change features

Care must be taken to distinguish the import of (57) from the claim made above that in null subject languages, movement may leave a pronominal trace, i.e pro. What (57) states is that values for the features of pronominality and anaphoricity, once assigned, may not be altered. Since the pro module does not license null pronominals in English, the e.c. must be a trace and thus subject to the ECP.

We have discussed replacement of expletives by NP’s and by small clauses. One may ask whether other categories can participate in expletive replacement. Much research of recent years has converged on the idea that the principles generating phrase structure, the X-bar schemata, are category neutral. In the words of Stowell (1981: 267), then, "...it is impossible for any syntactic position to be specifically reserved for any particular category." From this it follows that the subject position cannot be specified as an NP position per se.

Within the context of our discussion of expletive replacement, Stowell’s claim means that expletives should be freely replacable. This is trivially met in
sentences where there is only a single potential replacement for the expletive, in 'free inversion' configurations, for example, with an intransitive verb.

The *there* of *be* sentences, we claimed, is replaced by the small clause complement of *be*, but that cannot be an intrinsic property of *there*, since *there* can also be replaced by NP's, when the main verb takes a NP and not a SC complement. More important, however, is that the substitution of *there* by a small clause follows from Case theory in tandem with the Subject Stipulation and need not be stated as a property of *there* replacement.

We assume then, that expletives may be freely replaced and that more general constraints will inhibit the generation of illformed outputs. We are already equipped with several such constraints. For example, the characterization of the subject position as an A-position will bar the replacement of expletives by adjuncts (i.e. non-θ-marked elements) by the Chain Condition, (since the resultant chain will have no θ-role.25) We have seen that the interaction of the principle of Full Interpretation and the Subject Stipulation derive the obligatory thematicity of subjects in LF. Thus we need not stipulate that only θ-marked elements may replace an expletive. Furthermore, familiar constraints on structure preservation, in the sense of Emonds (1976) ensure that only maximal categories can move into SPEC/IP.

25 I am putting aside problematic cases of PP preposing such as (i).

(i) in the room is a book

For some discussion, see e.g. Safir (1985), Stowell (1981).
In the course of this work, we will encounter a number of cases where there will be more than one potential replacement for an expletive and we shall see that, modulo other restrictions, any one of the candidates can substitute the expletive. For instance, a range of locative constructions in Hebrew may be bracketed as either (58a) or (58b). The expletive may be replaced either by the locative PP-(58b)- or the small clause -(58a), (see Ch.6 for further discussion.)

(58) a. \[\text{VP} \text{V} [\text{SC NP THEME PP LOCATIVE}]\]

b. \[\text{VP}[\text{V} \text{V NP THEME} \text{PP LOCATIVE}]\]

Let us, now, turn to the impersonal passive construction of Hebrew, in which a null expletive pro co-occurs with a postverbal oblique argument and is replaced by the PP containing the argument.

2.7 Hebrew Impersonal Passives and Expletive Replacement

The impersonal passive construction in Hebrew is restricted to a small class of predicates. An almost complete inventory is given in (59).
The verbs in (59) are passive in form and always singular in number. I have given the forms in the past tense although they are just as fine in the present or future tenses as well. These verbs all subcategorize for PP's and can also take clausal complements to varying degrees of acceptability:

26 With (60c), cf. the acceptable 'dubar 'al kax Se-ha-xok ha-xadaS hu anti-demokrati' = was decided on it that the new law is anti-democratic, an indication that dubar takes only a PP complement. The marginality of (60d) is eliminated when a locative PP or temporal adverbial is added, e.g. 'nixtav ba-'iton/etmol Se-ha-xok ha-xadaS hu anti-demokrati' = was written in-the-paper/yesterday that the new law is anti-democratic.
An important fact about these verbs is that they may not appear as bare predicates but require some sort of complementation. That is, (59) or (60) above would be unacceptable were it not for the presence of the postverbal PP or clause. A modifying adverb or adjunct phrase does not suffice to meet the restriction against what Safir (1985), in a discussion of basically parallel facts from French, called 'stripped predicates'. Thus, the sentences in (61) are all illformed, (cf. Kayne (1975), Pollock (1981) (1983)).

(61) *
   sukam
   nuxlat
   dubar
   nixtav
   noda
   nimsar
   duvax

Let us assume that the subject position of these passive forms is filled with a null expletive pro. At LF, this pro must be replaced by an argument, which we take to be the PP or S' complement of these verbs. Thus, the LF representation of (59) is given in (62).27

(62) [pp' al ha-ce'adim le-bitul xok ha-teror ha-xadas]
    on the-steps to-abrogate law the-terror the-new
    'on the steps to abrogate the new Terror Law'

27 At S-structure, these PP's may appear in preverbal position, but as with English PP subjects, they are actually topicalized from the subject position and adjoined to IP, (see Stowell (1981).) I assume that whatever bars PP subjects at S-structure, let us say, Stowell's Case Resistance Principle, is inoperative at LF and the PP's may be moved directly into the subject position.
The 'impersonal' agreement manifested by the verb form is the typical form of agreement with impersonal subjects.

The illformedness of the stripped predicate constructions in (59) is due to the fact that there is no argument to replace the expletive with in LF leading to a violation of the principle of Full Interpretation.

It is worth emphasizing that pro in (59) is replaced by the postverbal PP and not by the oblique argument itself. The evidence for that is, as before, taken from the domain of scope assignment. If (59) could be represented as (63), we would expect (64) to be ambiguous between (65a) and (65b). (64), however, can only have the meaning (65a) with the NP three steps exercising narrow scope. If LF preposition stranding were allowed, (64) could give rise to a representation resembling (63), and nothing would prevent the NP three steps from adjoining to its clause and taking scope over the negation particle, contrary to fact.

\[(63) \quad [\text{NP ha-ceadim le-bitul xok ha-teror ha-xadaS}] \text{sukam al t}_1 \text{ the-steps to-abrogate law the-terror the-new was decided on} \]
\[
\quad \text{'the steps to abrogate the new Terror Law were decided on'}
\]

\[(64) \quad \text{lo sukam al SloSa ceadim neg was decided on three steps}
\quad \text{'it wasn't decided on three steps'}
\]

\[(65) \quad \begin{align*}
\text{a.} & \quad \text{it is not the case that it was decided upon three steps} \\
\text{b.} & \quad \text{there were three steps that were not decided upon}
\end{align*}
\]
The impossibility of replacing pro by the oblique NP may be viewed as an instance of the impossibility of preposition stranding in Hebrew. Yet, in Ch. 3 below, we claim the P-stranding must be universally available in LF. What rules out (63), however, is the ECP, since the e.c. in oblique object position is not properly governed. (In Hebrew, extraction from oblique object position is
possible only when a clitic doubles, and hence, properly governs the
extraction site.)

2.8 Expletive Argument Pairs and Binding Theory

There are languages, e.g. German, Dutch, where the restriction against
stripped predicates does not hold. At this point I do not understand why
stripped predicates are allowed in the Germanic 'it was danced' construction.
To pursue a speculation, note that in Germanic, impersonal passives are not
restricted to a small class of verbs, as in Hebrew, but can be formed with any
intransitive (unergative) verb. (Perlmutter (1978)). Another difference
between Hebrew (and English/French) and Dutch, for example, is that Dutch
er occurs productively with unergative and not merely unaccusative verbs,
as the following sentence shows (from Reuland (1983)).

(i) ik zag dat er iemand danste
    I said that there someone danced

Since dance is an unergative verb. (in Perlmutter's (1978) terminology,) its
cocurrence with er suggests that subjects can, in general, be generated
internally to VP in Dutch, an option which is restricted in Hebrew (and
English) to unaccusative (and passive) predicates. Given these independent
differences between the two languages, one may consider Reuland's (1983)
claim that Dutch impersonal passives involve a VP-internal phonetically null
quasi-argument which then replaces er in LF. Hebrew, in this approach, will
be said to differ from Dutch in not allowing quasi-arguments to be generated
inside VP.

A problem with this explanation is that there are languages with VP internal
quasi argument subjects and no impersonal passives. Such a language is
Italian, where quasi argument subjects of weather predicates can be
associated with either an unergative or an unaccusative D-structure, as
demonstrated by the alternation between auxiliaries essere and avere in
(ii). (From Belletti & Rizzi (1986)), yet Italian does not have an impersonal
passive construction.

(ii) a. è piovuto
        is rained
è ruotata
        is turned

b. ha piovuto
   ha ruotato
The binding theoretic problem posed by expletive argument pairs is this: If an expletive is coindexed with an argument and moreover, c-commands it, then expletive argument pairs ought to be subject to the binding theory. The binding theory, in turn, would characterize such a coindexed pair as a condition C violation, since a referring NP, a name, is bound by the expletive.

In Chomsky (1981: 218) this problem was dealt with by the introduction of a different form of indexing for expletive argument pairs: Superscript indexing. Chomsky argues that the proper representation of (66a) is (66b) and not (66c).

(66) a. there arrived three trains
     b. there\textsuperscript{1} arrived [three trains]\textsuperscript{3}
     c. there\textsubscript{1} arrived [three trains]\textsubscript{3}

Superscripts were said to be invisible to the binding theory, unlike subscripts, which feed it. One motivation for incorporating superscripting into the grammar came from the theory of Case: Such a formal device could count as the means by which Case is transferred from an expletive to an argument. However, if Case transfer is not a genuine process, such independent motivation for superscripts is lost.

Safir (1985) proposed that all indexing is formally of the same type. In his system, expletives and arguments are coindexed, just as are anaphors and antecedcents. His Unity of Indexing Hypothesis (UIH, op. cit. :21), however, deprived him of an explanation for the lack of binding theoretic violations incurred by expletive argument pairs, which the introduction of superscripts
was designed to bypass. Safir then proposed that while postverbal definite NP's were indeed subject to the Binding theory, and it was the binding theory which was held, in Safir's theory, to be responsible for the definiteness effect, indefinite NP's were optionally exempted from the binding conditions. In brief, Safir made the following claims:

(a) The binding theory does, in fact, apply to expletive argument pairs (which it must, given the UIH.)

(b) This is what explains the definiteness effect.

(c) Indefinite NP's, but not definite NP's can escape the effects of the binding Theory.

In this work, I adopt the approach to the definiteness effect advocated by Belletti (1987). Once one accepts that the DE is subject to a different explanation, Safir's UIH re-introduces the problem that co-superscripting was designed to circumvent, namely, the binding theoretic bind that coindexing an expletive argument pair leads to.

Adopting, in essence, Safir's UIH, Rizzi (1982), Chomsky (1986a) propose that a binding relation between an argument and a nonargument is not subject to binding theory.

"This makes intuitive sense, given the core sense of binding in terms of referential dependence." (Chomsky (1986:144))

Thus, an expletive may be coindexed with an argument, meeting the structural conditions for a binding relationship, but the latter fails to take place because of the nonarguemental nature of the expletive. While this latter proposal is certainly reasonable, let us, following the proposal of
Chomsky (1986a:179), see if it is possible to allow binding theory to apply freely and to derive its nonapplicability to expletive argument pairs from the ERH.

One direction we can pursue is to allow the binding theory to apply freely at S-structure or at LF. If the Binding Conditions could be suspended at S-structure and applied only in LF, the replacement of the expletive with an argument would have the consequence of transforming a putative S-structure Condition C violation into a licit LF Condition A configuration. Consider (67). At S-structure, the expletive argument pair does indeed, run afoul of Binding Condition C.

\[(67)\quad \begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \text{there}_1 \text{ arrived } [\text{three trains}]_1 \\
\text{b. } & [\text{three trains}]_1 \text{ arrived } e_1
\end{align*}\]

Suppose, now, that the Binding theory is free not to apply at S-structure. At LF, (67b) is derived and the Binding Conditions apply. Now, condition C is trivially satisfied, because the only R-expression in (67b) is the subject, and it is free. Condition A applies, but the NP-trace of three trains is appropriately bound by its antecedent.

The proposal that Binding Theory and specifically, that Condition C may be free to apply either at S-structure or in LF does, perhaps, display some intuitive appeal. At the same time, however, there is rather robust evidence that it is false, and that Condition C must apply at S-structure. Consider (68).\(^{29}\)

---

\(^{29}\) I am indebted to A. Barss for discussion of this point.
(68) a.  *he₁ likes [every picture of John₁]

          b.  John₁ said that Bill had seen HIM₁  (HIM with focal stress) (Chomsky (1981:197))

The illformedness of (68a) is due to a Condition C violation induced by coindexing John and he. If Condition C could be suspended at S-structure and apply directly to LF representations, (68a) ought to be well-formed, since its LF, given in (69a) does not violate the Binding conditions.

(69) a.  [every picture of John₁]₁ [he₁ likes t₁]

          b.  HIM₁₁ [John₁ said that Bill had seen t₁]

Exactly the reverse situation is manifested in (68b). HIM is coreferential with John and a Condition B violation is not manifested because HIM is free in its governing category - the embedded S. At LF, however, (68b) gives rise to a Condition C violation since the trace of HIM, an R-expression, is bound by John, (69b).

There is an alternative perspective on the applicability of the Binding Conditions to expletive argument pairs. In our discussion of there-replacement, we argued that optimally, the grammar should not impose upon there a limitation on the kind of categories, e.g. NP, that are allowed to replace it and that whatever restrictions do apply to there replacement, they should be made to follow from independent principles, notably, from Case theory. Suppose we now interpret this idea in terms of indexing, and claim that expletives do not need to be coindexed with the element that replaces them. Suppose, in other words, that the process of "free indexing", can skip over an expletive. Since the latter is not required for Case theory,
it does not need to bear an index and is thus invisible to the Binding Conditions, which apply at S-structure.

We have argued that expletive replacement forms a chain in LF. As in all chains, there is a binding relationship between the head of the chain and its tail. However, the chain formed by expletive-replacement comes into being only in LF. At S-structure, crucially, there is no chain relationship between the expletive and whatever will replace it. Thus, Condition C of the Binding Theory will apply vacuously to expletive-argument pairs at S-structure.

For the sake of explicitness, consider the representations in (70). (70a) is a licit S-structure representation: Crucially, there does not bear an index. Of course, it may bear one, since it is assigned Case by INFL, but there is nothing that requires that it to, since it is replaced by an indexed element in LF. Binding Condition C applies to (70a) vacuously, as desired. Now at LF, three trains replaces there and in the course of move α, the subject position acquires an index, a proper chain is formed and the ECP satisfied.30

(70)

\[
\begin{align*}
(70) & \quad \text{a. there INFL arrived [three trains]}_i \\
& \quad \text{b. [three trains]}_i \text{arrived}_t \text{INFL}\_i [vP \_t \_t]\end{align*}
\]

2.9 Agreement and other Problems

30 In Sect. 5.5, p. 12, we develop what is perhaps a more adequate solution. There, we argue that Condition C, while indeed sensitive to S-structure representations, actually applies as a filter to LF representations. Such a mechanism allows expletives and arguments to be coindexed at S-structure. The elimination of the expletive by replacement in LF willy nilly disposes of the Condition C violation. The filter which then applies does not affect such sentences. Such a solution has implications for the problem of number agreement, discussed below in 2.9.
There are two problems that I can see with the account just presented. First, it seems not to generalize to cases such as (71a) below, since there and its trace must be coindexed through move a at S-structure, in order for the ECP to be satisfied, (through complex chain formation.) Once there acquires an index, it seems, nothing can prevent it from binding three men.

(71)  

a. there i seem t_i to be [three men]_i in the room

b. there, seem t_i to be [three men]_i in the room

Yet this is not a genuine problem, because it rests on the assumption that the chain formed by Raising of there, i.e. (there, t_i), must share an index with three men. There is, however, nothing which requires that. Furthermore, there is replaced, we have argued, not by three men but by the small clause complement of be, i.e., three men in the room, so there is no need to coindex there and three men, surely not at S-structure. (71a) should, then, be more appropriately represented as (71b).

The second problem is a more general one for the proposal in this chapter and has to do with number agreement. If there is replaced by the small clause complement of be and if, moreover, there doesn't bear an index at S-structure, it is not clear why the main verb obligatorily agrees in number with the postverbal NP, even in such cases as (71) above, where there is raised from the subject of the sentential complement of seem.
Let us assume that AGR features are anaphor-like and must be bound by LF, at the latest, (cf. Borer (1987)). Consider, now, the possibility of assimilating the binding of AGR by the subject of a small-clause in subject position to the binding of *him* by the NP-internal possessor subject *his* in (72).

(72) [every man's mother] spoiled him

Let us follow Reinhart (1986) and define binding as in (73).

(73) A node $\alpha$ binds a node $\beta$ iff $\alpha$ and $\beta$ share an index and $\alpha$ either c-commands $\beta$ or is a specifier of a node c-commanding $\beta$.

According to this definition, the specifier (i.e., subject of) a small clause can bind an element which the small clause node c-commands.

In our discussion of impersonal passives in 2.7, we have seen that, in Hebrew, verbs bear 'impersonal' third person agreement with clausal subjects. We may suppose that English differs from Hebrew in requiring that agreement is always with an NP, i.e., that there is no default impersonal agreement with non-NP subjects. Thus, impersonal constructions in English are formed either with *it*, which is an NP directly binding AGR or with *there* which is replaced by an element which can either satisfy the agreement itself (when it is a bare NP,) or which has a specifier acting as an antecedent for AGR.

---

31 W.r.t to it in English and il in French, assume that the features of AGR are bound at S-structure since there is an available binder at that level.
32 See also, 5.9 below, where impersonal agreement is discussed in detail.
This proposed solution, however, conflicts with the analysis of (71) that we have just presented. We argued that the chain (there, t) does not bear the same index as three men. Now, in order for the trace of there to be properly governed, it must be linked to there through a 'complex' chain incorporating the verb seem and the matrix INFL. The latter, then, must be marked with the same index as there and consequently it is contra-indexed with three men. Yet in order for AGR to be bound it must be coindexed with its antecedent, three men. We might consider reinterpreting a suggestion of Chomsky (1962: ft.11) and permit indices borne by non-referential elements such as INFL to be reinterpretable in LF. Thus, an INFL which bears an index 'i' at S-structure may be reinterpreted as 'j' in LF in order to be appropriately bound.

To conclude this brief section let us summarize the main points. The problem considered is that while the semantics of there sentences suggest that there is replaced by a small clause and not an NP, the obligatory agreement with the postverbal NP favors the view that at some level, there is associated with an NP. I proposed to account for this association with the following assumptions:

a. English lacks an impersonal default agreement and only has personal agreement which is anaphor-like and requires an NP antecedent.

b. INFL and perhaps all non-arguments may change indices.

c. Reinhart's definition of binding, i.e. (73).

2.10 'it' Replacement
Let us, finally, consider it-replacement. Although there are various arguments in the recent literature to the effect that the pleonastic it, unlike, say, there, is not an expletive but a pronoun, I will continue to assume that 'expletive' it is a true expletive, (74). Clearly, it can be a pronoun, (75). In addition, it can serve as a 'quasi argument', that is, as a pronoun of sorts. This is evidenced by the fact that it appears as the subject of temporal and weather predicates, where it can control PRO in an embedded clause, (76a-c).

(74) it seems that Mary is unhappy

(75) it's a bird, it's a plane, no it's superman!

(76) a. it rained
    b. it snowed
    c. it rained without [PRO snowing]

It, then, plays triple fiddle in the grammar of English: As pronoun, semi-pronoun and expletive. I will discuss only its role as an expletive.

Consider, now, the replacement of it in LF. The assumption that expletive it, like there, is replaced by the entire postverbal clause, as opposed to S-structure Raising which moves only an embedded subject, can account for a

33 See Chomsky (1986a:92) for the suggestion that the pleonastic it of predicates such as is obvious is assigned a θ-role, as opposed to the it of seems. For a recent development of the idea that it, and perhaps more clearly, its Dutch counterpart het are pronouns, see Bennis (1987). See, also, Hazout (1986) and the Appendix to this chapter for the argument that Hebrew ze is a pronoun and not an expletive.
range of scope asymmetries between Raising and it-replacement in a very straightforward manner.

As discussed in, e.g., May (1985:97), the subject of an extraposed clause cannot be interpreted with wide, clausal, scope, whereas a Raised subject can be so interpreted. (77a) below may be construed as presupposing the existence of hippogryphs; (77b), on the other hand, entails no such presupposition.

(77)  a. a hippogryph is likely to be apprehended
       b. it is likely that a hippogryph will be apprehended

Under the assumption that it is replaced by the entire clause [a hippogryph will be apprehended] in LF, the opacity of (77b) can be attributed to the ECP, namely, to the impossibility of extraction of a subject of a clausal subject. The analysis of the unavailability of a wide-scope reading for the postverbal subject of a there sentence can be carried over to (77) in toto.

As in the case of there sentences, Case theory induces it replacement by the entire clause. Since the subject of the embedded clause is Case marked nominative by the embedded INFL, it cannot subsequently Raise and replace it, since that would violate the Chain Condition. Thus, an S-structure such as (78a) cannot give rise to an LF such as (78b), but only to (78c).34

(78)  a. it seemed that [John left early]

34 Note that, in fact, Case theory need not be invoked to rule out (76b), since t₁ is marked [-y] and thus violates the ECP.
\[\text{d. } \text{John}_i \text{ seemed that } [\text{s} \text{ t}_i \text{ left early}]\]
\[\text{c. } [\text{that John left early}]_i \text{ seems } e_i\]

It is, therefore, appealing to assume that \text{it}, like \text{there}, is not associated, in any intrinsic way, with, say, an \(S'\) complement; rather, it fills in a position for the subject, and its replacement at LF with an argument is constrained by Case theory, ECP, etc.

One issue, which I am not entirely clear about, is why (78c) is not a possible \(S\)-structure representation.

Note, first, that many, if not most adjectives of extraposition do take sentential subjects, as the acceptability of (79) illustrates.35

(79) \[\text{[that Reagan funded the Contras] is obvious/is necessary}\]

One may, then, suppose that the unavailability of sentential subjects is a specific property of Raising predicates. That, however, cannot be the case, since the acceptability of sentential subjects varies from one Raising predicate to another. While \text{seem}, \text{appear} do not tolerate sentential subjects, Raising participles such as \text{believed}, \text{expected} fare better, (80a), (80b).

---

35 This correlates with the other properties distinguishing \text{seem}, \text{obvious}, etc... See ft.33.)
(80) a. [that Reagan funded the Contras] is believed by everyone in Congress

b. [that John would leave early] was expected

Moreover, even seem and appear can take sentential subjects when they are followed by some predicative adjective:

(81) [that John will leave early]t1 seems [IP t1 clear] appears [IP t1 likely]

Whatever bars sentential subjects of certain predicates is related not to their character as Raising predicates but to their semantics: Seem and appear are inherently presentational, non-predicational verbs, perhaps even 'copular', as claimed by Rothstein (1983).

The descriptive generalization appears to be that there is some semantic or pragmatic incompatibility between clausal subjects and presentational or copular verbs. Gueron (1980) claimed that one of the distinguishing features of presentational sentences is in the way focus is assigned: In a presentational sentence, the subject is the nucleus of focus whereas in a predicational sentence, it is typically the VP which is focused.

Now, in (78c) above, for example, focus is assigned internally to the clausal subject and not to the entire clause. This may be due to the fact that focus cannot be assigned to an entire sentence, but only to subparts thereof. Whatever the reason is, the sentential subject of seem is not focused and
hence the entire clause cannot be interpreted as presentational but only as a predication. A predicational interpretation is made available when seem is followed by a predicational element, but is rendered unavailable with seem alone.

If these distinctions are, indeed, statable in terms of intonational criteria such as focus, it is plausible that they may be overruled in LF, allowing a clause as a subject of seem and appear while maintaining the presentational interpretation. In reverse terms, it is not clear what can rule out, (78c) in LF. I grant, nevertheless, that this issue is in need of further study.
APPENDIX

Pleonastic Elements in Hebrew

Borer ((1983), (1986a)), citing sentences such as (82a), argues that the formative ze is a pleonastic in substandard Hebrew. Yet the acceptability of (82a), with ze should be contrasted with the unacceptable use of ze in (82b). This minimal contrast indicates that there is some lexical fact about the predicates hezrazi and mutav which licenses ze as the subject of the first predicate, but not of the second.

(82) a. ze hezrazi Se-roS ha-memSala inhag be-Volvo
      it is necessary that -head the government will drive in-Volvo
      'it is necessary that the prime-minister will drive a Volvo'

       b. *ze mutav Se-roS ha-memSala inhag be-Volvo
      it is better that -head the government will drive in-Volvo
      'it is better that the prime-minister will drive a Volvo'

Hazout (1986) argues that ze is a referential pronoun and not an explicative. It's distribution is restricted to fully thematic subject positions, a fact which explains its absence from the subject position in (83) and the obligatoriness of a null subject.

(83) a. (*ze) nimsera hoda'a
      it was communicated message
      'a message was communicated'

       b. (*ze) carix la'avod
      it must to work
      'one must work'

       c. (*ze) duvax 'al ha-te'una
      it was reported about the accident
      'it was reported about the accident'
d. (*ze) nimsar Se Dan nigi’a (passive. No subject θ-
it was communicated that Dan arrived role.)
'it was communicated that Dan arrived’

e. (*ze) kar (‘weather’ predicate.
’it cold’
(it is cold’
‘Quasi’-referential θ-
role.)

Hazout claims that in (82a) above, ze receives the subject θ-role which is
associated with the extraposed sentential complement of hezrazi. Now,
while some predicates assign the subject role to CP complements externally,
i.e., via the subject position- hezrazi, others are lexically specified to assign
the subject θ-role internally, e.g., mutav. I will not pursue these ideas
further in this work. I bring them up only to justify the point that when the
subject position is non-thematic, ze may not appear. Hebrew can thus be
seen to pattern like the other NSL’s, in not having overt expletives.36

36 But see Bursio, (1985) for discussion of the pleonastic ci in Italian. Hebrew ze seems to pattern more like French ça, then Italian ci.
CHAPTER 3
CASE THEORY

3.1 Introduction

The Visibility Condition (VC, Aoun (1979), Chomsky (1981)) or the Chain Condition (Chomsky (1986b)), are intended to derive the effects of the Case Filter (Rouveret and Vergnaud (1980), Chomsky (1980)) by making the acquisition of Case a necessary condition for θ-role assignment. In more general terms, the VC can be viewed as a licensing device operating at LF, that is, at the level where the θ-criterion needs to be met.

The VC has been the subject of some controversy since it was originally introduced. The bone of contention, to my understanding, has been over a number of cases adequately handled by the Case Filter which receive no explanation under the VC. Thus, it is claimed, if some version of the Case Filter must be assumed in addition to the VC, it can no longer be persuasively maintained that the VC derives the effects of the Case Filter by reducing them to a more principled licensing condition.

At the same time, the VC has an advantage over the Case Filter in that it can predict the distribution of variables, on the assumption that they must be Case marked. In order to derive the condition that variables be Case marked from the Case Filter alone, one must introduce additional assumptions which
diminish the restrictive power of Rouveret & Vergnaud's original claim.\footnote{For example, Chomsky (1981:175) assumes that the 'Extended' Case Filter applies to overt NP's or to variables, Borer (1983) assumes a separate condition for variables while Safir (1985) proposes to treat variables as lexical NP's.} Furthermore, most if not all proposals which 'enrich' the Case Filter in some sense have left a recalcitrant residue, consisting mainly of counterexamples to the requirement that variables require Case, (e.g., Borer (1981),(1983)) or suggesting that variables receive Case under conditions different from those of overt NP's, as may be seen, for example, in the following contrast, (from Chomsky and Lasnik (1977:478).)

\begin{enumerate}
\item a. *John believes sincerely [Bill to be the best man]
\item b. who does John believe sincerely [it to be the best man]?
\end{enumerate}

However, if variables do not require Case, than the 'residue' not covered by the Case Filter is eliminated and there is altogether no need for the VC. The problem with such a view is that there are other residues not covered by the Case Filter, namely, null arguments and expletives, which are restricted to Case marked positions, (overt expletives could be susbumed under the Case Filter qua overt lexical NP's.) Being phonologically null, like variables, they do not lie within the jurisdiction of the Case Filter and being non-variables, they would be unaffected by the various extended or revised Case Filters cited above. The distribution of expletives has been used as an argument in favor of the VC, recently in Chomsky (1986a), where it is argued that Case must be assigned to an expletive in order to be transmitted to the element with which the expletive form a CHAIN. The problem here is that, as we have tried to show, there is evidence that there is no Case transmission and
that postverbal NP's in object position, for example, must be directly Case marked.

In what follows, I suggest a resolution of these difficulties. I will claim that Case theory consists of two conditions. The first is the Case Filter and the second is a slightly modified version of the VC as it is stated in Chomsky (1986a:137, i.e. the Chain Condition of Ch. 1.) The claim is that Case theory is a licensing theory both for the input to the PF component (to meet some sort of 'phonological visibility') and into the LF component in order to satisfy 'θ-visibility'. I will argue that the Case Filter part of the module must only be satisfied by phonologically overt elements, as originally claimed by Rouveret & Vergnaud while the LF condition must be met by all arguments. Prima facie, it seems reasonable to suppose that the null/overt dichotomy is relevant only at S-structure, since S-structure representations feed PF, the level at which the null/overt distinction is made fully manifest. On the other hand, principles applying in LF, i.e. to representations which are, in any case, nonovert, are not sensitive to the overt/null distinction. The proposal to admit into Case theory two components will be shown to have empirical advantages over other proposals, especially with regard to the status of variables.

3.2 Expletives and Case

In Ch. 2, it was shown that expletives do not transmit Case to a postverbal NP. Yet, as the paradigm in (2)-(4) seems to show, both it and there are restricted to Case marked positions (cf. Safir (1985:76), Travis (1984:238.)
(2) *(for) it to appear that Mary likes beans would be shameful

(3) a. I wanted there to be a party  
b. *I tried there to be a party

(4) a. I hoped for there to be three women in the room  
b. *I hoped there to be three women in the room

Now, the fact that both there and a party in, e.g., (3) need Case argues, prima facie, against the Chain Condition— which requires that chains have a single Case-. But recall that partitive Case, which is the Case assigned by be in (3), can be assigned either inherently or structurally. Since be θ-marks a party in (3a), it can assign its Case inherently. In LF, the inherently Case-marked a party moves into a (structural) nominative position. The Chain Condition is not violated because the chain has only one structural Case.² In the examples in (4), partitive Case is assigned to three women structurally, (see above, pp. ) and no Case is assigned to the small clause. At LF, the entire small clause complement replaces the expletive. In order for the chain to be well-formed, it’s head must be Case-marked. This requirement is met in (4a) but not in (4b).

What is puzzling here is that the VC, in its standard formulation, would be satisfied if only the expletive had Case, since the head of the chain formed by replacing it in LF would be in a Case position and the chain visible for the θ-criterion. The VC does not require that the postverbal NP be marked with

² Note that inherent Case is assigned at D-structure. The element bearing it then moves, leaving a Case-free trace, so that the chain has only one Case-marked position, the head.
Case at all. Yet we have seen that it must be directly and locally Case marked.

Suppose, now, putting aside the status of the VC for a moment, that UG incorporates the Case Filter.

(5). *NP if NP has phonetic content and has no Case

As stated, (5) immediately accounts for the fact that all overt NP's including expletive it must be Case marked (with the added provision that inherent Case is sufficient to satisfy it, a provision which is independently necessary to account for the satisfaction of the Case Filter by NP's to which structural Case is never assigned.) As for expletive there, let us assume that it is treated as an NP by the Case conditions.

Note, now, that not only overt but also phonetically null expletives require Case. This can be seen in the following Italian sentences which were discussed originally in Furzio (1985).

(6) a. *sembra essere arrivati tre ragazzi
   seems to have arrived three boys
   b. *voglio essere arrivati tre ragazzi
   I want to have arrived three boys

The relevant aspects of the representation of the sentences in (6) are given in (7).

(7) a. pro₁ sembra [₃ pro₂ essere arrivati [₃tre ragazzi]
   b. voglio [₃ pro₂ essere arrivati [₃tre ragazzi]
The 'offending' element in (7) is pro₂, which occupies the subject position of an infinitive where Case is not assigned. Note that (inherent partitive) Case is assigned to the postverbal NP, tre ragazzi. If the Case module could be satisfied by merely having one member in a chain marked for Case, the Caselessness of pro₂ in (7) ought to be irrelevant.

Further evidence that expletive pro appears only in Case marked positions is provided in the Aux-to-Comp construction in Italian, discussed in Rizzi (1982). Let us consider gerunds, (although a parallel argument can be made on the basis of the more stylistically marked construction involving Aux-to-Comp in infinitival complements. See Rizzi ((1982: ch 3 and 4), (1986) for discussion.) The relevant pair of sentences is given in (8).

\[(8)\]  
\[a. \text{ essendo arrivata una brutta notizia, non possiamo partire} \]
\[\text{having arrived a bad piece of news: we cannot leave} \]
\[b. \text{ avendo Maria telefonato a casa, Piero è partito} \]
\[\text{having Maria telephoned home, Piero had left} \]

Following Rizzi, let us assume that (8a) and (8b) have the same structure: The verbal auxiliary avendo or essendo is in COMP and the subject position is amenable to nominative Case marking by the fronted auxiliary, licensing the presence of an overt NP in (9b) and of pro in (9a).

\[(9)\]  
\[a. \text{ [CP essendo [IP pro arrivata]]} \]
\[b. \text{ [CP avendo [IP Maria telefonato]]} \]

The sentences in (8) should be compared to those of (10) where a PRO subject appears in a position which may not be occupied by an overt subject.
Rizzi claims that the distribution of \textit{pro} is coextensive with the domain of nominative Case assignment. Only PRO and not \textit{pro} (or an overt NP) can occupy the subject position in (10) because in the absence of auxiliary fronting to COMP, the subject position is not governed and a context for Case assignment is not created.

The Case Filter, (5), cannot account for the fact that a null expletive such as the one in (8a) require Case since it applies only to phonetically overt elements. Yet even if a clause were added to the Case Filter, expanding its domain of application to include some phonetically null elements, we would be left bereft of an explanation for why it is that only the empty categories which head chains in LF (i.e. variables and PRO) require Case, while traces of NP-movement do not.

Suppose, now, that we add (11) to the Case module, (following Chomsky (1986a:137) and Belletti (1987).)

(11) The head of a chain must be in a Case position (or be PRO.3)

---

I have nothing to contribute to the theory of PRO in this thesis. Conceivably, PRO is made visible to the ε-criterion through means other than the Chain Condition and lies outside of the domain of Case theory altogether. Chomsky (class lectures, Fall (1986),) proposes that Control theory supplies the licensing theory for PRO.
(11) can be viewed as a precondition, a 'visibility requirement' for the assignment of a \( \theta \)-role. (i.e. 'an element in chain \( C \) is assigned a \( \theta \)-role iff \( C \) satisfies (11).') Null expletives get Case because at LF they are replaced by arguments and a chain is formed. Since expletive argument pairs are not transformed into chains until LF, (11) must be able to apply in LF. Does it also apply at S-structure? Let us suppose that it doesn't have to. (11), then, can be seen as condition which must be satisfied by LF.\(^4\)

One question which must be addressed is why (11) cannot be satisfied by an inherently Case marked NP which transports its Case with it, so to speak, to the subject position, into which it is moved. Note that if that were possible, we could not derive the fact that expletives need Case from a condition such as (11), since a LF representation such as (12) would meet it, even if the expletive did not need Case.

(12) \( NP,INHERENTCASE \) \( INFL \) \( V \) \( t \)

As argued by Belletti, partitive Case can only be realized in LF in a Case-marked position, analogous to quirky Case in Icelandic which can only be

\(^4\) Note that extraposed sentential complements - discussed above in Chapter two, note \( \dagger \), need only meet Condition (11). Since they are not NP's, they are not subject to the Case Filter, yet at LF they move in to occupy the subject position, which is a Case position.
realized at S-structure in a Case-marked position. This entails that all expletives must be in Case-marked positions. 5

Consider, now, the sentences in (13). (13a) is ruled out because there is in a non Case marked position, in violation of the CF. A hypothetical sentence such as (13b), however, ought to be well formed since pro is nonovert and therefore needs to meet only Condition (11) and not the CF. At LF, pro will be replaced by ti but the head of the chain will not be ti but rather, a man, which is in a Case marked position, as subject of is certain. The LF representation of (13b) is given in (14). 6

(13) a. *[a man]i is certain [Ip there to be seen ti]

        b. [a man]i is certain [Ip pro to be seen ti]

(14) *[a man]i is certain [Ip ti to be seen ti]

The hypothetical (14b) which is predicted to be wellformed, must be distinguished from the unacceptable Italian sentence (7a), which I repeat in (15) below.

5 This leaves open the status of Chomsky’s (1986a) Uniformity Condition (UC) which requires that inherent Case be realized on an NP under government by the category that 0-marks it at D-structure. As stated, the UC rules out passivization of an NP inherently Case marked by V, since passivization moves its victim outside of the government domain of V.

6 (14b) may, however be ruled out as an ECP violation, since ti is marked[-γ] at S-structure, (thanks to N. Chomsky for pointing this out to me.)
(15) *pro₁ sembra [spro₂ essere arrivati [NP tre ragazzi]]

Since the matrix verb sembra does not agree with the postverbal NP tre ragazzi, the replacement of pro₁ by tre ragazzi in LF would yield an ill-formed chain. Let us assume that Full Interpretation is met by replacing pro₁ with the entire clause which follows sembra. Third person singular agreement on sembra can be taken to be agreement with an impersonal, clausal subject. pro₂, on the other hand, will be replaced by tre ragazzi, there being no other candidate around to replace it. Thus, the LF representation of (15) will be (16).

(16) [s [NP tre ragazzi] essere arrivati t₁] sembra t₁

The illformedness of (15) is due to the fact that pro₂ and hence, the chain headed by tre ragazzi in the LF representation (16), is not Case marked since tre ragazzi is in the subject position of a non-finite verb. Hence, condition (11) is violated.

The conceptual difference between the CF and (11) is that the former is an S-structure filter, a 'visibility' condition for PF representations, whereas (11) ties Case in with θ-role assignment. As stated, the CF has nothing to say about phonetically-null elements such as variables and null subjects. Furthermore, phonetically overt elements must be Case marked even if they do not head A-chains in LF. Suppose, then, that the Case module of Universal Grammar incorporates a condition on phonetic visibility which, indeed, is
neutral w.r.t empty categories as well as a condition on thematic visibility which is not sensitive to phonetic content.7

One matter left open in the discussion thus far concerns the status of moved \textit{wh}-words w.r.t the Case conditions. Insofar as \textit{wh}-words are phonetically overt, they should be subject to the Case Filter. Yet fronted \textit{wh}-words do not occupy A-positions and, as such, are not subject to condition (11), which is stated as a condition on (heads of) A-chains. Suppose we extend this restriction to the CF, so that it too will be sensitive only to elements in A-positions. Consequently, fronted \textit{wh}-words are not subject to the Case Filter.

Note, further, that this restriction has consequences for the status of 'syntactically inverted' of VP-adjoined NP's. In principle, the VP-adjoined position may be Case marked directly by INFL since there is no barrier separating the two.6 Yet if Case is assigned to the VP-adjoined NP and not to the preverbal pro, the latter would be bereft of Case and a well-formed chain could not be established in LF. Of course, the possibility of assigning Case to a VP-adjoined NP altogether, rests on the hypothesis that this position is an A-position. Suppose it is not. Then an NP in that position will vacuously satisfy the CF. Nominative Case, let us assume, is assigned by INFL to pro. One difference, then, between VP-internal and VP-adjoined

\footnote{These ideas are in the spirit of Aoun (1979) who proposed a distinction between features relevant to the PF component and features visible only in the LF component.}

\footnote{Crucially, no minimality barrier.}
subjects is that the former get partitive Case from V and the latter get no Case at all.9

Our analysis thus far has led us to postulate a Case theory which consists of two conditions, (17a) and (17b). We have argued that an adequate characterization of the distribution of Case requires both conditions and the CF (20a) cannot be simply subsumed under (17b).

(17)  a. The Case Filter (applies by S-structure)
       b. Condition (11) (applies by LF)

'it' Replacement Revisited

It is perhaps not surprising that a theory which incorporates (17a) as well as (17b) has greater empirical coverage than a theory which makes do with a Case Filter alone. One example of the greater empirical adequacy of (17) is that it can straightforwardly account for the illformedness of (18).

(18)  *who does it seem [t₁ to be intelligent]

Since t₁ is non-overt, it will vacuously satisfy the CF and the ungrammaticality of (18) will be unexplained. (17b), however, rules it out since t₁ heads an A-chain, yet it is not Case marked.

We have argued that (17b) need only be satisfied by LF and, contrary to

---

9 TOPIC's, clefts, left-dislocated NP's, etc... all occupy A'-positions and thus need not meet the Case conditions. The theory of Case is a theory about A-chains, (Chomsky (1981.)
(17a), does not have to be met at $S$-structure. At LF, however, expletive it is replaced by an argument. What needs to be ruled out is an LF representation wherein $t_i$ can, itself, replace it and receive the nominative Case assigned to the matrix subject position, forming a structure such as (19a) below. The LF of (18) must be something like (19b) if the illformedness of (18) is to be accounted for on Case theoretic grounds.

(19) a. who$_i$ does $t_i$ seem [$_i$ $t_i$ to be intelligent]
   b. who$_i$ does [$_i$ $t_i$ to be intelligent]$_j$ seem $t_j$

In our discussion of it replacement in 2.10 above, we claimed that in a sentence such as (20a), it cannot be replaced by the NP John, as in (20b), since John is Case marked internally to the embedded clause and movement into a Case marked position violates the Chain Condition. The LF representation of (20a) can only be (20c).

(20) a. it seems that John is intelligent
   b. John$_i$ seems that $t_i$ is intelligent
   c. [John is intelligent]$_j$ seems $t_j$

Note that the reasoning which ruled out (20b) cannot be carried over to (18), since the trace could wait until LF and then move into the matrix subject position to replace the expletive, giving a well-formed output.

To rule out (18), then, some stipulation must be made to the effect that it can only be replaced by a clause. Such a stipulation, however, would rob us
of the very plausible account of the alternation between Raising and it-insertion in such pairs as (21).

(21) a. John seems to be intelligent

b. it seems that John is intelligent

The standard account for (21) is that it is inserted as the subject of seems when Raising of John does not occur. A stipulation to the effect that it is somehow intrinsically restricted to only go with clauses loses the connection between it-insertion and Raising and compels us to formulate it-insertion in terms similar to those of Chomsky & Lasnik (1977), (22), missing an obvious generalization.

(22) Insert it in the position of NP in:

\[
\text{for NP } V^* (PP)[S \text{-that } S] [V^*-\text{be, seem}, \ldots +WH}
\]

Consider, now, an alternative, which would allow us to maintain the dual claims that expletives are not inherently marked so as to be replaced by an element of a specified category and that variables do not need to be Case marked until LF. Suppose that expletive replacement is subject to some version of the A-over-A Condition, as in (23).

(23) Replace it with the highest category that can replace it

(23) would achieve the desired consequence since even if it were, in principle, replacable by an NP, (23) would force the clause in which it is

\[\text{Here I am following a suggestion due to N. Chomsky (p.c.)}\]
embedded to replace it. Note that (23) need only apply to it because the replacement of there by a small clause, in the appropriate contexts, is independently guaranteed by Case theory, as shown above in 2.6.\(^{11}\)

### 3.3 Variables and Case

One consequence of the discussion in the previous section is that nonoverert categories need to meet only the part of the Case conditions that is checked in LF. It follows, then, that variables need not be Case marked until LF. This predicts that overt NP's and variables ought to manifest an asymmetry in their distribution which is explicable in terms of the level at which these items need to meet the conditions of the Case module. Let us consider a

\(^{11}\) Alternatively, one could consider generalizing the A-over-A restriction, allowing it to apply redundantly in cases of there replacement. Pursuing this for a moment, suppose that the A-over-A condition is a principle of UG and not a local restriction on it replacement. This would have the effect of ruling out all instances of LF Raising. The question now, is, what rules in, S-structure Raising, or, why is the A-over-A condition suspended in (S-structure) Raising configurations? Suppose that the A-over-A is a weak condition at S-structure, which means that it may be overruled by a stronger condition. Suppose that the Case Filter is a strong condition and thus takes precedence over the A-over-A condition. What this amounts to is that when an NP needs Case the A-over-A principle can be overruled and the NP raised in order to meet the Case Filter.

Suppose that the weakness of A-over-A is not upheld in LF so that in LF it cannot be overruled. At LF, by hypothesis, all constraints have the same strength since there is no evidence to the contrary. This would achieve the desired result and prevent LF raising.
concrete example, which I gave above in (1) and which I repeat below in (24), (Chomsky and Lasnik (1977).)

(24) a. *John believes sincerely [Bill to be the best man]
    b. who does John believe sincerely [t₁ to be the best man]
    c. the man who I believe sincerely [t₁ to be the best man]

The same pattern extends to (25).

(25) a. we want very much [*(for) John to win]
    b. who do you want very much [t to win]?
    c. we'd prefer most of all [*(for) John to be the candidate]
    d. who would you prefer most of all [t to be the candidate]?

(24a), (25a,c) are illformed, because they violate the adjacency condition on Case, crucially, at S-structure (see Ch. 2.) The question is what accounts for the acceptability of (24b,c), (25b,d). One possibility is that Case adjacency

Pesetsky (1982) makes the proposal that e.g., (24b) has the S-structure (i). In (i), the adverb is adjoined to an INFL' which is extraposed and adjoined to VP on the right.

(i) who₁ does [IP John [VP [VP believe [IP t₁ [I sincerely]] [I to be the best man]]]]

In structure such as (i), the variable is indeed adjacent to the verb. The possibility of adjoining an INFL' to the right rests on the judgment one assigns to (ii), which Pesetsky views as grammatical but other speakers I have consulted consider marginal.

(ii) John believes Bill sincerely to be the best man

In more general terms, extraposition of INFL' presupposes that it is a constituent which is quite dubious.
simply does not constrain LF representations. In an account such as that of Stowell (1981), where the adjacency constraint is built-in as a component of Case theory, this is quite plausible, since there is independent evidence that the Case module treats LF representations differently from S-structure ones. However, if the adjacency constraint is viewed not as component of Case theory but, rather, as an instantiation of the more general constraint against c-command out of a binary-branching constituent, as argued in Kayne (1987), then it becomes less plausible to suppose that adjacency for Case is merely an S-structure effect. Kayne would consider the ungrammaticality of (24a) as following from the fact that the verb believe and the adverb sincerely form a constituent, as in (26). In (26) believe does not c-command Mary and hence cannot Case-mark it.

Claiming that adjacency does not effect LF representations is tantamount to saying that a different notion of c-command holds in LF. Suppose, then that adjacency must be met both at S-structure and in LF.

The problem, now, is to account for the acceptability of (24b,c). Since variables need to be Case marked only in LF, nothing prevents (24b), for example, from being represented at LF as (27), with the adverb sincerely, moved into the specifier of VP so as to have scope over it. If we add the auxiliary hypothesis that movement of sincerely does not have to leave a
trace, we can derive an LF representation in which believe c-commands t₁ and the adjacency effect is eliminated.

\[(27) \quad \text{who₁ does John [vp sincerely [v·believe [ip \ t₁ to be the best man]]]}
\]

Recall that in our treatment of Case adjacency in 2.2 above we made the crucial assumption that the trace of a verb retains the Case assigning property of its antecedent. This means that even though believe is moved into INFL in LF, its trace retains the capacity to assign Case to the variable. The appropriate LF for (24b) is thus, more precisely, (28).

\[(28) \quad \text{who₁ does John [t₁ believe [vp sincerely [v·t₁ [ip \ t₁ to be the best man]]]]}
\]

A slightly different case is discussed in Kayne (1983:5).

(29)  
   a. John, who I assure you to be the best.....
   b. *I assure you John to be the best.....

(29b) is ruled out by the Case Filter since assure is not an S'-deleter and cannot Case-mark the subject of an embedded clause. What rules in (29a)? In Kayne’s theory, assure, like, say, believe, Case marks into the COMP position of the embedded clause, satisfying the Case module. Case
assignment to an intermediate trace is a form of Case transmission, a process which we argued is not sufficient to satisfy the Case conditions. One could argue that the ban against transmission of Case holds only of A-positions and that elements in A'-positions can transmit Case freely, (which is a consequence of the argument put forth in Borer (1981), (1983). See ahead, 3.4.) But note that even if assure could, in principle, Case mark into COMP in (29a), the direct object you would prevent it from doing so because of the adjacency effect. To get around this difficulty, Kayne (class lectures (1986),) proposes that (29a) is bracketed as follows, with [you t to be the best... ] a binary branching constituent, (30).

(30)

While such bracketing has the consequence of eliminating the adjacency problem, since assure now c-commands t'1, it drives the COMP of the embedded clause further away from its governor and renders questionable the capacity of assure to govern and Case mark across two categorial projections.

Note that the account proposed for the sentences in (24)-(25) cannot be carried over to (29a) because the 'interfering' formative in (29a) is a θ-marked object and not an adverb that can be moved at LF and whose trace can be deleted. If you were, say, moved into the specifier of VP, the
projection principle would require that it leave a trace in its \( \theta \)-position and that trace would induce an adjacency violation in LF.

Consider, now, the possibility of moving the clausal complement of \textit{assure} in LF into a position where the subject of the embedded clause would be adjacent to \textit{assure}. Let us assume, contrary to Kayne, that \textit{assure} is an \( S' \)-deleter so that the clausal complement in (29) is IP, not CP. The LF representation of (29a) is then, (31). \textit{assure} has moved into INFL and the IP complement is left-adjointed to VP: \textit{assure} is now in a position to Case mark \( t_1 \) and condition (17) is met.

Note that \textit{assure} in (29b) is assigning accusative Case twice. Once, to \textit{you} at \( S \)-structure and again to the subject of \[ \text{it to be the best...} \] from its position in INFL in LF.

(31)

Those readers who would dismiss (31) as an overzealous manipulation of clausal architecture, should consider the price of \textit{ruling out} such a derivation.
As far as I can see, (31) entails no ad hoc or otherwise unfamiliar assumptions.\textsuperscript{13}

Consider, finally, the contrast between the sentences in (32),
(Kayne, (1983:5).)

(32)  a. Jean, que Marie croit être intelligent...
     b. *Marie croit Jean être intelligent.

As in the previous examples, let us view this contrast as a reflex of the asymmetry between variables and overt NP's w.r.t. the level at which the Case conditions must be satisfied. Stated in such terms, the observation that needs to be explained is that croire behaves like believe only in LF. One way of capturing this difference, in terms amenable to an analysis such as the one I have been proposing, is to say that croire is an S'-deleter in LF but not at S-structure. If S' deletion is a genuine syntactic process, it should be available universally. The English speaking child is confronted with positive evidence that S' deletion is available at S-structure. The French child, on the

\textsuperscript{13} Some speakers consider (29a) to be marginal (cf., the corresponding interrogative, ?who did you assure me to be the best...?). One might consider attributing this to the interference of a weak barrier in the form of a VP segment in (31), which inherits barrierhood from IP. This requires that a complement IP, while L-marked when it is in its VP-internal θ-position, loses its L-marking when moved to a VP-adjoined non-θ-position.

The difference between Kayne's (30) and our (31) is that the variable in (31) is separated from its Case assigner, assure, by one full non-L-marked clausal projection, IP, (which is a blocking category but not a barrier,) and a segment of a maximal projection, VP. In (30), however, both CP and the constituent [you CP] are full projections. We might consider this as evidence in favor of Belletti and Rizzi's (1987) claim that segments are weaker barriers than full categories.
other hand, being exposed to no such cases, takes the 'unmarked' option and assumes that *croire* is an S'-deleter only in LF.\(^{14}\)

### 3.4 Variables, Case and Clitic Doubling

One of the consequences of the treatment of variables presented above, is that it deprives us of the 'Case absorption' analysis for the inextractability out of clitic doubled positions. (Cf. Aoun (1979), Borer (1983), Jaeggli (1982), (1985) and much other work.) Taking Borer's (1983) theory of clitic-doubling as a starting point, let us see why this so.

Clitics are, in Borer's words, "generated as features on the head of their phrase. They do not fill the argument position which is the complement of this head. This position is independently generated and can be independently filled if a Case-assigning device is available" (op.cit. p. 63.) This latter claim is generally known as 'Kayne's Generalization'. Clitic-doubling constructions thus have the structure in (33). The clitic is generated attached to the head and is coindexed with the complement position.

\(^{14}\) Note that in order to account for (i), which contrasts with English (ii), we must add that S' deletion in LF is optional, allowing PRO in the embedded clause, while it is obligatory at S-structure, (cf. Kayne (1983:112).)

- (i) Je crois avoir faire une erreur
- (ii) *I believe to have made a mistake

Alternatively, this contrast might be interpreted as evidence that PRO must be licensed only at S-structure, as suggested to me by H. Lasnik, (p.c.)
In Borer's theory, clitics are spellouts of the Case features of a head and thus deprive the coindexed NP of its Case. To give an example from Hebrew, (34) violates the Case Filter since the Case which is assigned to the NP ha-mora ('the teacher') is absorbed by the clitic -a.

(34) *beit-a₁ ha-mora₁ 'omed 'al ha-giv'a
   house-her the-teacher stands on the-hill
   'her house the teacher stands on the hill'

(34) may be salvaged if ha-mora receives its Case by some other means. Borer shows that Hebrew instantiates Kayne's Generalization by inserting a dummy preposition-like genitive Case marker, Sel, in a position adjoined to the Caseless NP. Sel can now assign Case to the possessor of house and the Case Filter is satisfied. This is shown in (35).

(35) bēit-a₁ Sel ha-mora₁ 'omed 'al ha-giv'a
    house-her of the-teacher stands on the-hill
    'the teacher's house stands on the hill'

Since a study of clitics is beyond the scope of this work, I will put aside further discussion of the subject and of the alternative approaches to clitics in the literature and press on to the topic of variables in clitic doubling constructions, which is the main theme under investigation.
If variables do not need to satisfy the Case Filter at S-structure, but only condition (17) in LF, then it is not patently obvious that they have to meet Kayne's Generalization. Consider the following reasoning. The main insight of most theories of clitic-doubling is that a clitic on a head deprives its doubled NP of Case. A question left open is the status of 'Case absorption' in LF. In more concrete terms, it is not clear what compels the S-structure in (33) to remain unchanged in LF? What rules out an LF representation of (36a) such as (36b), with the clitic simply deleted, or (36c), with the clitic replaced by its doubled NP, to name only two of a myriad possibilities? Crucially, though, it must be possible for a verb to assign Case twice, once to the clitic - at S-structure- and a second time at LF, to the variable in the argument position.

\[(36)\]  
\[\begin{align*}
\text{a.} & \quad X'' \\
& \quad X+cl_i \\
& \quad \text{NP}_i \\
& \quad cl_i+X
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{b.} & \quad X'' \\
& \quad X \\
& \quad \text{NP}_i
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{c.} & \quad X'' \\
& \quad \{X+\text{NP}_i\} \\
& \quad \{\text{NP}_i+X\}
\end{align*}\]

The leading idea here is that grammatical processes of a universal nature such as affect α, which may be restricted in certain languages or in certain configurations, must, in principle, be available as part of the endowment of
UG. Alternatively, ruling-out derivations such as those in (36b,c) above, would involve setting up complex rules, which would be hard to justify empirically and which would be inconsistent with the trend of recent grammatical theory to eliminate complex rules in favor of general principles.

The prediction made by the theory of Case put forth above is that, ceteris paribus, extraction out of clitic doubling configuration should not induce violations of the Case principles. In fact, we predict that in the absence of a Case saving device, such as the genitive Case marker Sel in Hebrew, clitic doubling ought to be bad but extraction from clitic doubling structures ought to be good.

An examination of the very complex array of data relating to clitic doubling in those languages where this phenomenon is found will greatly exceed the scope of this investigation. I will confine myself to a small fraction of the documented facts, leaving the bulk of the investigation for future research.

Consider first the situation in Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), as described in Ayoub (1981), Mouchaweh (1986), Wahba (1984). wh-questions can be formed either with a gap, (37a), (38a) or with a clitic, as in (37b), (38b),
(Data from Wahba, op.cit., pp. 79 ff.)

\[(37)\]

a. \(\text{man}_i \text{ ra'at Fatimat-un } t_i\)
   \(\text{who saw Fatima+NOM}\)
   'who did Fatima see?'

b. \(\text{man}_i \text{ ra'at-hu}_i \text{ Fatimat-un } t_i\)
   \(\text{who saw-him Fatima+NOM}\)

\[(38)\]

a. \(\text{man}_i \text{ qalat Fatimat-un 'ann 9aliyy-an ra'a}\)
   \(\text{who said Fatima+NOM that Ali+ACC saw}\)
   'who did Fatima say that Ali saw?'

b. \(\text{man}_i \text{ qalat Fatimat-un 'ann 9aliyy-an ra'a-hu}_i\)
   \(\text{who said Fatima+NOM that Ali+ACC saw-him}\)

The alternation between the gaps and the clitics in (37)-(38) is "consistent and free." (Wahba, p.79.) While Wahba regards the clitics in (37b), (38b) as spellouts of traces it seems to me that they should more appropriately be characterized as doubling a position occupied by the trace, (as is explicitly argued by Ayoub, (op. cit.).) Wahba shows that interrogation into syntactic islands is impossible even in the presence of a clitic, (39). This argues against treating the clitics as resumptive pronouns, since the strategy of employing resumptive pronouns in place of gaps is precisely a means of

\[15\] Similar remarks hold for relativization, e.g.,

(i) \(\text{al-walad-}\text{u}_i \text{ alladhi ra'at Fatimat-un } t_i \ldots\)
   \(\text{the-boy+NOM who saw Fatima+NOM} \ldots\)
   'the boy that Fatima saw...' 

(ii) \(\text{al-walad-}\text{u}_i \text{ alladhi ra'at-hu}_i \text{ Fatimat-un } t_i \ldots\)
   \(\text{the-boy+NOM who saw-him Fatima+NOM} \ldots\)
getting around a violation of subjacency which is incurred by extraction from an island.

(39) a. *'ayya bint-in 9arafa 9alîyy-un [NP al-walad-a [CP alladhî] 
   which girl<GEN knew Ali NOM the-boy<ACC who

   [IP tj daraba tj/-ha1]]?
   hit t/her

   'which girl did Ali know the boy whom hit (her) ?'

b. *'ayy kitab-in 9arifa 9alîyy-un [NP al-mu'allifa] [CP alladhî 
   which book<GEN knows Ali NOM the author<ACC who

   [IP tj katab tj/-hu1]]
   wrote it

   'which book does Ali know the author who wrote (it) ?'

While the clitics are in free variation with gaps in (37b), (38b), the clitics are 

obligatory when extraction takes place from an NP, as shown in (40), (from 

Ayoub: 234.)

(40) a. *man ra'ayta [NP saahib-a tj ] 
   who you saw friend<ACC
   'whose friend did you see ?'

b. manj ra'ayta [NP saahiba-hu1 ]

Let us assume that extraction with a clitic always proceeds from a 'doubled' 

position. While the clitics are optional in extraction from within VP, they are 

obligatory when extraction proceeds from within NP. The difference is that 
the clitic internal to NP, as in (40) above, is needed to properly-govern the 
trace. Traces in VP can be properly-governed by an intermediate trace
adjoined to VP. Such an option is unavailable for NP's, since NP's are \( \theta \)-marked arguments and thus do not tolerate adjunction. If the clitics were merely 'spellouts' of traces, the asymmetry between extraction from NP and from VP would remain mysterious.\(^{16}\)

The obligatoriness of clitics carries over to extraction from within PP, as shown in (41).

(41) a. \(*\text{man} \text{i mararta} \ [\text{pp bi-t} \text{i}]\)
   
   \textit{who did you pass by?}

b. \text{man} \text{i mararta} \ [\text{pp bi-hi} \text{i} \text{t} \text{i}]

Since MSA does not allow prepositions to be stranded, as in (41a), a clitic is obligatory.\(^{17}\)

The relevant clitic configuration for, (37b), (40b), (41b) above, are given in (42), below.

(42) \[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{saahib-hu} \text{i} \\
\text{[NP t} \text{i}] \\
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{VP} \\
\text{ra'at-hu} \text{i} \\
\text{[NP t} \text{i}] \\
\end{array}
\]

\(^{16}\) This suggests that in MSA movement of a complement of NP does not proceed through the specifier of NP, contrary to, say, Spanish, (Torrego (1986).) I discuss this more fully in the Appendix on pp. below, w.r.t a parallel range of Hebrew data.

\(^{17}\) It is conceivable that (41a) is ruled out by the ECP. This would follow under two assumptions, first, that PP, like argument NP's (and CP's) resists adjunction and secondly, that PP does not contain a SPEC position. The first may, in general be true (cf. Chomsky (1986b).) As for the second, it is plausible that whatever blocks movement through [SPEC/NP] in Arabic affects PP as well. See Appendix for some further discussion.
While the empty category in the doubled position in (42) is a trace of wh-movement, as seems reasonable given its sensitivity to bounding effects, the e.c. in relative clauses and Topicalization constructions is a null resumptive pro. This is evidenced by its insensitivity to subjacency, (43) an indication that the gap is formed not by movement but by means of the resumptive strategy. (43a), with a clitic, contrasts with (43b), with a gap:

(43)  

a. qara'tu el-maqaalata ilati saafara S-Sabu  
I read the article that travelled the young man  
lladhii kataba-haaw  
who wrote-it  
'I read the article that the man who wrote went travelling'  

b. *qara'tu el-maqaalata ilati saafara S-Sabu  
I read the article that travelled the young man  
lladhii kataba t1  
who wrote  

Since pro is licensed in MSA in subject position, it is quite plausible that it appears elsewhere. I assume, then, that the relevant clitic structure for (43a) is (44).
Note that (43) is also compatible with a structure such as (45), where the clitic itself is the resumptive pronoun, generated in the argument position from which it undergoes cliticization onto V in the phonological component.

We have seen clitics are entirely optional in the grammar of MSA, modulo the ECP and restriction against P-stranding, which may be ECP-related. Suppose, now, that the clitic deletes in LF. This is, in fact, desirable, given the principle of Full Interpretation, since clitic configurations and gap-configurations are given a uniform interpretation. At LF, then, (37a) is indistinguishable from (37b). Since the clitic is out of the way, the variable can be Case marked directly by the head and condition (17b) is satisfied.

Interestingly, MSA disallows clitic doubling configurations when the clitic doubled NP is overt:

(46) a. *ra'aytu-hu l-walada
   *I saw-him the-boy+ACC

   b. *marartu bi-hi Zayd-in
      *I passed near-him Zayd+GEN
c. *zaa’a Sadiqu-hu Zayd-in/un
    arrived friend-his Zayd-GEN/NOM

(46a-c) are only acceptable without the clitic. These facts are fully explicable by the Case absorption theories. The clitic in (46a-c) absorbs the Case due to the complement NP and the sentences violate the Case Filter.

The possibility of extraction from that same position, that is, the wellformedness of (46a-c) when the complement is a variable would remain mysterious if variables and overt NP’s were subject to the same Case conditions. The approach advanced in this work, however, is capable of providing a natural explanation for this asymmetry: Variables are not subject to the Case Filter but only to Condition (17b) which applies to heads of A-chains in LF.

Considering first clitics on verbs, suppose that the free variation between clitics and gaps observed in S-structure representations is manifested also in LF so that a clitic configuration at S-structure may give rise to a non-clitic configuration in LF. The elimination of the clitic would allow Case to be directly assigned to the variable and condition (17b) would be satisfied.

Consider, next, clitics in NP’s, which, we saw, are obligatory in extraction configurations. Their obligatoriness stems, we argued, from their role in [+γ] marking the trace. Once marked for [+γ], however, the value for this feature remains fixed so that the clitic which assigns [+γ] to a trace is redundant in LF from the point of view of the ECP. Case theory, however, requires that the clitic delete, so that Case may be assigned directly to the NP complement trace.
Consider, lastly, clitics on prepositions. Their obligatoriness follows from the fact that prepositions in Arabic cannot be stranded, unlike some prepositions in English. However, nothing rules out preposition stranding in LF and the fact that it is attested at S-structure in English suggests that it ought to be available universally. I do not understand why some languages allow P-stranding at S-structure while others do not. I conjecture, however, that all languages allow P-stranding in LF. The wellformedness of structures derived from LF P-stranding depends on whether there is some device, e.g., a clitic, to assign [+y] to the NP complement trace.

**Egyptian Arabic**

A slightly different array of facts is manifested in Egyptian Arabic (EA, Wahba (1984).) EA differs from MSA in that extraction is always out of a clitic doubling configuration, whereas in MSA clitics are obligatory only in extraction from NP and PP. A fronted wh operator in Topicalization constructions, questions and relative clauses, is obligatorily coindexed with a clitic inside the clause.

(47) a. il-walad, Mona Saafit-* (uh) imbarih  
   *the-boy, Mona saw-him yesterday*

   b. il-walad, illi Mona Saafit-* (uh) imbarih  
   *the boy that Mona saw-him yesterday*

   c. miini, illi Mona Saafit-* (uh) imbarih  
   *who that Mona saw-him yesterday*
As in MSA, interrogation out of a syntactic island in EA obeys subjacency whereas relativization and Topicalization do not.

(48) a.  il-beet dbah, baba ye’raf [NP il-raaqii][IP illi [IP t1 bana-ha1]]
         *this house, Father knows the-man that built-it
         ‘this house, Father knows the man who built’

b.  il-beeti [CP ill [IP baba ‘aabill [NP il-raaqii] [CP illi [IP t1 bana-
         the-house that Father met the-man that built
         ha1 ]]]]...

         it
         ‘the man that Father met the man who built....’

c.  *miin1 illi baba sara’ [NP il kitaab] [CP illi [IP Mona iddat-uh]
         who that Father stole the-book that Mona gave-it
         lili-ha1 ]]]
         to-her
         ‘who did Father steal the book that Mona gave it to ?’

I will, again, assume that relative clauses and Topic constructions utilize the resumptive strategy, and that the empty category in the ‘doubled’ position in relative clauses and Topics is pro or, alternatively, that the clitic itself is the resumptive pronoun. Questions, on the other hand, are always formed
through movement, hence the empty category associated with a fronted wh-word is a trace.¹⁸

¹⁸ Languages which make abundant use of resumptive pronouns typically disallow them from the position of gaps in root interrogatives. Putting the generalization differently, resumptive pronouns can vary with gaps only in constructions which are interpreted through predication, i.e. relative clauses, topicalization constructions, etc... In Shlonsky (1986), I argue that relative clauses with resumptive pronouns do not involve an operator in [SPEC/CP] and the relative clause is interpreted by being predicated of the head directly. Interrogatives, on the other hand, cannot be interpreted predicatively. An interrogative operator has semantic content which must be represented while an operator of relative clauses is merely a syntactic facilitator which is redundant from a semantic point of view. If we assume that operators may not be base-generated in an A'-position but only moved there we can derive the fact that interrogatives are incompatible with resumptive pronouns, since the latter fill the position from which extraction of the operator is launched.

The resumptive pronouns which do not vary with gaps, i.e., those which fill positions which are inaccessible to movement in e.g., English can occur in interrogatives as well as in relative clauses. Those may be viewed, not as base-generated pronouns but as pronouns inserted to save a sentence as a last resort. It is not surprising, then, that in these cases the pronouns become more acceptable as the presence of a gap gets worse. For example, they sound better in positions where a gap would violate ECP than in positions where a gap triggers a milder subjacency effect.

For the distinction between these two sorts of resumptive pronouns drawn along semantic lines, see Sells (1984).
As in MSA, clitic doubling of an overt NP in EA is impossible, since the clitic absorbs the Case of the complement NP and there is no saving device to Case mark the complement NP.  

(49) *Mona Saafit-hu, il-walad

Even though EA doesn't allow clitic doubling, it allows extraction from the position of the clitic doubled NP, which is precisely the prediction made by a Case theory such as the one I have been advancing.

Now, when the wh-word in EA questions is 'nonnominal', in Wahba's terminology, (i.e. when it is a pied-piped PP or an adjunct,) interrogation proceeds somewhat differently. The characteristic features of 'non-nominal' wh-words are given in (50), and illustrated in (51)-( 52) (from Wahba: 22.)

(50) a. The complementizer illi which is obligatory with 'nominal' wh-operators, is missing.

19 Lebanese Arabic differs minimally from EA in having exactly such a saving device, in the form of the preposition la (Aoun (1979).)

(i) Seft-o la Mahmuud
   I saw-him to Mahmuud
   'I saw M.'

(ii) hklit ma9-o la mahmuud
   I spoke with-him to M.
   'I spoke with M.'

(iii) Street kteeb-o la mahmuud
   I bought book-his to M.
   'I bought M.'s book'
b. No clitic may be associated with the operator.

(51) a. ma'9a miin1 Mona raahit il-Qahira t_i?
    with whom Mona went to-Cairo
    'with whom did Mona go to Cairo?'

b. *ma'9a miin1 illi Mona raahit il-Qahira t_i?

c. *ma'a miin1 Mona raahit-uh1 il-Qahira t_i?

(52) a. feeni Mona raahit t_i
    where Mona went
    'where did Mona go?'

b. *feeni Mona illi raahit t_i

c. *feen Mona raahit-ha1 t_i

At this point, I do not understand why 'nominal' wh-words behave
differently from non-nominal ones. One possibility which may be worth
considering is that EA does not possess clitics corresponding to PP's or to
adjuncts so that the ungrammaticality of, say, (51c), (52c) is due to a
categorial mismatch between the (nominal) clitic and the non-nominal wh-
word. The status of the complementizer illi, however, is still mysterious to
me. I present these facts as a basis for a comparison with Hebrew, to which
I now turn.

Hebrew
Hebrew relatives and Topicalization constructions pattern like those of EA and MSA: The movement strategy and the resumptive strategy are in free variation.20

(53) a. ze ha-iS̱ Se-ra'iti (oto̱)  
   this the-man that-I saw (him)  
   'this is the man that I saw'

b. iS zeI ra'iti (otoI) etmol  
   man this, I saw (him) yesterday  
   'this man, I saw yesterday'

Clitics are obligatory in extraction from PP's and NP's. As in Arabic, NP-internal and perhaps PP-internal clitics in Hebrew are required by the ECP.21

(54) a. ze ha-iS̱ Se-xaS̱v̱ti 'al-*(avI)  
   this the-man that I thought about-(him)  
   'this is the man that I thought about'

b. ze ha-iS̱ Se-ra'iti et im-* (oI)  
   this the-man that I saw acc mother-(this)  
   'this is the man whose mother I saw'

As in the Arabic dialects discussed above, clitics in Hebrew relative clauses instantiate the 'resumptive strategy' and Island effects are circumvented.

(55) a. ze ha-iS̱ Se-nikarti [NP et ha-iSaI [CP Se- [IP tI ahava * (otoI)]]]  
   this the-man that-I knew acc the-woman that loved (him)  
   'this is the man that I knew the woman who loved him'

---


21 See the appendix to this chapter for some discussion of extraction from NP in Hebrew.
b. ze ha-iši se-hikarti [NP et ha-išaj [CP se- [IP t] xaSva 'al-
this the-man that-I knew acc the-woman that-thought about-
*(av₃)]]

him
'this is the man that I knew the woman who thought about him'

c. ze ha-iš se-hikarti [NP et ha-išaj [CP se- [IP t] ahava et im-
this the-man that-I knew the woman that-loved acc mother-
*(oj)]]

his
'this is the man that I knew the woman who loved his mother'

I will assume that the clitic in (55b,c) either doubles a pro or is resumptive in its own right. (The direct object pronoun oto in (53a), is not a clitic but a free standing pronoun. As such it itself is a resumptive pronoun and a clitic configuration is not manifested.)

Consider, now, free relatives (FR's. Borer (1983:72-77)). Like restrictive relatives, the free relative operator is associated with a clitic configuration.

(56) a. ze miš se-xaSavti 'al-*av₃)

this who that I thought about-him
'this is who I thought about'

b. ze miš se-ra'iti et im-*oj]

this who that I saw acc mother-his
this is who I saw his mother

(57) a. ze miš se-xaSavti se-hem dibru 'al-*av₃]

this who that I thought that they talked about-him
'this is who I thought that they talked about'
Borer shows that FR's, unlike restrictive relatives, are formed through movement. This is evidenced by their sensitivity to subjacency. Contrast the unacceptable (58a,b) below with the corresponding well-formed restrictive relatives in (55b,c) above.

(58)  
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \text{ *ze mi}_1 \text{ Se-hikarti [NP et ha-iSa}_j [CP Se- [IP t}_j \text{ xaSva 'al-av}_j]]} \\
& \text{'this who that-I knew acc the-woman that-thought about-him} \\
& \text{this is whoever I knew the woman who thought about him'}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{b. } & \text{ *ze mi}_1 \text{ Se-hikarti [NP et ha-iSa}_j [CP Se- [IP t}_j \text{ ahava et im-o}_i]]} \\
& \text{'this who that-I knew acc the-woman that-loved acc mother-his'}
\end{align*}
\]

While clitics may be resumptive in restrictive relatives, they double a trace in free relatives and extraction obeys subjacency.

Furthermore, the free-standing direct object pronoun, oto, cannot be employed in FR's, since these can only be formed by movement and oto is not a clitic which is doubling an empty argument position but fills the argument position itself. Contrast (55a) with (59).\footnote{In FR's the who-element plays the role both of the operator and of the relative head. It is not surprising, therefore, that FR's pattern like interrogatives in disallowing a resumptive pronoun from filling the position of the gap.}

(59)  
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ *ze mi}_1 \text{ Se-hikarti [NP et ha-iSa}_j [CP Se- [IP t}_j \text{ ahava oto}_i]]} \\
& \text{'this who that-I knew acc the-woman who loved him'}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
& \text{'this is who I knew the woman who loved him'}
\end{align*}
\]
Hebrew FR's, then, behave like EA and MSA interrogatives in that the clitic doubles the trace of movement.

Insofar as S-structure clitic doubling is concerned, Hebrew may be placed halfway between EA and Lebanese Arabic: It has a 'saving' device, the preposition-like element Sel, but the device has a restricted distribution. It appears only in NP's, never in PP's or VP's. This follows from the fact that it is an assigner (or realization) of genitive Case which is restricted, in Hebrew to NP-internal positions.\(^{23}\)

\[(60)\]
\[
\begin{align*}
a. & \quad \text{kaniti et sifr-}o_1 \text{ Sel Dan}_1 \\
& \quad \text{I bought acc book-his of Dan} \\
& \quad \text{I bought Dan's book}
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
b. & \quad \ast \text{dibarti 'im-}o_1 \text{ Sel Dan}_1 \quad \text{(cf. dibarti 'im Dan)} \\
& \quad \text{I spoke with-him of Dan} \\
& \quad \text{I spoke with Dan}
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
c. & \quad \ast \text{ra'aiti oto}_1 \text{ Sel Dan}_1 \quad \text{(cf. ra'aiti et Dan)} \\
& \quad \text{I saw him of Dan} \\
& \quad \text{I saw acc Dan}
\end{align*}
\]

While clitic doubling of overt NP's is more restricted in Hebrew than in, for example, Lebanese Arabic, we have seen that extraction out of the doubled NP position, i.e., free relativization, is independent of whether or not Sel is available. Sel is unavailable in PP's, (60b), and clitic doubling of an overt NP is, in fact, impossible. Extraction from the doubled position in a PP, however, is fine, as the acceptability of (56a) above illustrates.

\(^{23}\) In this respect, Hebrew differs from MSA and from Classical Arabic, where genitive Case is also assigned in PP's, (overtly in the latter.)
The point here, once again, is that Case theory applies in different ways to variables and to overt NP's. Overt NP's require Case at S-structure which an overt clitic would absorb. So either the clitic is not generated or a Case marking device is inserted. Variables, however, may postpone Case-marking to LF. A clitic which is present in the S-structure representation is deleted, allowing for direct Case assignment of the variable.

The peculiarity in the grammar of Hebrew, in comparison to the dialects of Arabic surveyed above, is that questions disallow the clitic configuration altogether. Consider the sentences in (61), which minimally contrast with the free relatives of (56) above.

(61) a. *ma_i xaSavti 'al-av_i t_i ?
   what I thought about-it
   'what did I think about?'

   b. *mi_i ra'iti et im-o_i t_i ?
   who I saw acc.mother-his
   'whose mother did I see?'

Note that the ungrammaticality of (61) cannot be due to a violation of some Case principle, since the equivalent sentences in Arabic are fine, w.r.t Case. This is the crucial point. It is not clear how to prevent Case from being assigned to the doubled variable in (61).

Hebrew interrogatives pattern like EA nonnominal interrogatives, ((51), (52) above.) They are incompatible with clitic configurations and they induce deletion (or non-generation) of the complementizer. Hebrew FR's, on the other hand, pattern just like EA nominal interrogatives: They are fine with
clitics and the COMP position is filled. Thus, the nominal/nonnominal bifurcation among wh-words in EA is found in the contrast between interrogatives and free relatives in Hebrew.

And, in fact, the only way to form question out of PP or NP in Hebrew, is to pied-pipe the entire PP or NP, as shown in (62).

(62) a. \[\text{[pp 'al ma]i \text{xasavti} t_i ?}\]
\[\text{about what I thought}\]
\[\text{'what did I think about?'}\]

b. \[\text{[np et im-\text{o} Sel mi]i \text{ra'iti} t_i ?}\]
\[\text{acc mother-his of whom I saw}\]
\[\text{'whose mother did I see?'}\]

Adjunct wh-words can also be extracted; yet there is no clitic doubling the extraction site, nor is COMP filled with the complementizer Se.

(63) a. \[\text{matai} \text{noladta} t_i ?\]
\[\text{when you born}\]
\[\text{'when were you born?'}\]

b. \[\text{eifoi ata gar t_i ?}\]
\[\text{where you live}\]
\[\text{'where do you live?'}\]

To determine whether interrogation in Hebrew always extracts a 'nonnominal' wh-word, we must look not only at extraction from within NP or PP, but also at direct object extraction. We cannot test for this with the free standing pronoun oto because interrogation, like free relativization, does not employ the resumptive strategy and a pronoun in place of a gap will always lead to ungrammaticality.
Now, although clitics on finite verbs are rather marginal in Modern Hebrew—although they were used productively in earlier stages of the language—clitics on non-finite verb forms are widely attested, especially in the written idiom, where they freely vary with the free standing pronoun forms oto, ota, etc....

(64) a. bata le-vakr-ο_j le-vaker oto_4 be-beit ha-sohar
   you came to-visit-him in-house the-jail
   'you came to visit him in jail'

   (compare: ??etmol bikarta-hu be-beit ha-sohar)
   yesterday you visited-him in-house the-jail

b. tisnanti li-r'ot-a_j li-r'ot ota_4 ha-'erev
   I planned to-see-her the-evening
   'I planned to see her this evening'

   (compare: ??etmol re'iti-ha)
   yesterday I saw-her

Crucially, now, interrogation of a direct object of non-finite verbs is totally impossible with a clitic, only a gap is possible:

(65) a. *(et) mi_j bata le-vakr-ο_j be-beit ha-sohar
   acc who you came to-visit-him in-house the-jail
   'who did you come to visit him in jail'

b. (et) mi_j bata le-vaker t_j be-beit ha-sohar
   acc who you came to-visit in-house the-jail
   'who did you come to visit in jail'
The ungrammatical (65a) contrasts minimally with the perfectly acceptable FR, (66).

(66) ze mi$_i$ Se-bata le-vakr-$o_i$ be-belt ha-sohar
    this who that-you came to-visit-him in-house the-jail
    'this is who you came to visit in jail'

Although I find this asymmetry rather mysterious at present, let us see what sort of generalization seems to be emerging. It appears that Hebrew does not have nominal wh-interrogative operators; rather, that all interrogation in Hebrew is a form of pied-piping. Notice that if *mi* ('who') in (65) was an NP, (65a) should be grammatical, just as it is in Arabic.

Hebrew manifests the 'nominal'/non-nominal' dichotomy found in Egyptian Arabic, with a twist. Let us conjecture that both *et* *mi* and *mi* in (65) are PP's. Notice that one of the differences between Hebrew and, say, EA is that Hebrew, but not EA, employs an accusative marker, *et*. One may try to relate the two facts. Suppose that the combination [et-NP] is not an NP with *et* adjoined to it, as argued by Borer (1983), Borer and Grodzinsky (1986), but a PP of sorts, perhaps an indexed PP, (see ahead, section 6.3.) Suppose, further, that *et* has a null counterpart which is in complementary distribution with *et*, i.e., it appears before indefinite NP's. The unacceptability of (65) now follows from a categorial mismatch between the
clitic, which is nominal and the fronted wh-word which is not. (65a), for example, should be represented as either (67a) or (67b).

(67) a. *[pp et who]i did you come to visit-[np o]i [pp t] in jail?
   b. *[pp 0 who]i did you come to visit-[np o]i [pp t] in jail?

This conclusion is rather speculative and is in need of further clarification and elaboration. I will leave matters as they are for now. Suffice it to realize that the contrast between interrogatives and FR's in Hebrew, with respect to extraction from a clitic doubled position, has nothing to do with Case theory.


Borer (1983) explains the FR/interrogative contrast in Case theoretic terms. She argues that variables do not need Case; rather, the (A'-) chain of which they form a tail needs Case and it can receive Case either through its head or through its tail. On the assumption that the clitic, in both constructions, absorbs the Case due to the variable these configurations can only be saved by assigning Case to the head of the A'-chain. FR's, she argues, adopting the

---

24 The claim that et-NP is a PP and not an NP is inconsistent with some recent analyses, e.g. Borer (1983), Borer and Grodzinsky (1986). The crucial data in B&G (1986) involve a contrast between PP traces and traces of et-NP's. An NP complement of P which needs to be bound from outside the PP cannot be so bound once the PP is moved; a trace of a pp does not reveal its internal structure. The NP of an et-NP category, on the other hand is accessible to binding from outside the et-NP category, even when it is moved. This contrast can be straightforwardly explained if et-NP is simply an NP. I leave this matter open.

25 Another matter left open in this discussion is clitic doubling and extraction in the various Romance languages and dialects.
essence of Groos and van-Riemsdijk (1979), differ from interrogatives precisely in that the wh-operator is accessible to Case marking from outside. Interrogative wh-words, however, cannot be Case marked in COMP. The difference between the two is illustrated in (68), (Borer (1983: 77.))

(68) a.  **Free Relatives:**

\[
X \ldots [CP \, mi_1 \, [C \, Se \, [IP \, xaSavti \, [PP \, al-av_i \, t_i \, ]]]]
\]

Case assignment, where X has Case-assignment features

b.  **Interrogatives**

\[
X \ldots [CP \, mi_1 \, [IP \, xaSavti \, [PP \, al-av_i \, t_i \, ]]]
\]

No Case assignment

We have several reasons for rejecting this analysis. First, we have argued, on the basis of many examples, that clitics do not interfere with Case marking of variables. Thus, the variables in both interrogatives and FR's can be Case marked. Secondly, we have reasons to believe that Case is assigned directly to A positions, to heads of A chains and cannot be transmitted through a chain. Thirdly, Borer's analysis predicts that a sentence such as (99a) below should be grammatical, since Case can be assigned by the verb hire to whoever in satisfaction of the Case conditions.

(69) a.  *I'll hire whoever, it seems t_i to be a good worker

b.  I'll hire whoever, it seems t_i is a good worker

The contrast between (69a) and (69b) constitutes another argument in favor of direct and local Case assignment.
One question left open in the discussion above is why wh-extraction from within NP in Hebrew and Arabic may not proceed through [SPEC/NP], making the clitic redundant from the point of view of the ECP. Consider the hypothesis that Hebrew (and Arabic) NP's do not possess specifier positions. Consider the structure proposed for Hebrew (construct state) NP's in Borer (1983), which I give in (70) below. Borer's analysis implies that Hebrew NP's may lack SPEC. Let us hypothesize that they do not have one.

In Hebrew, as in Arabic, 'subjects' of NP's (i.e. possessors, agents) always appear to the right of the head noun. Furthermore, elements which figure as specifiers of NP in such languages as English, are typically nominal heads in Hebrew. This is evidenced, for example, with quantifiers such as 'all', 'part', 'most', and numbers by the fact that they take pronominal clitics. In addition, these elements undergo the phonological modifications.
characteristic of construct heads, (71). Lastly, some of them can be prefixed by the definite article ha-, (72).

(71) kol ------ kui-am
     all     all-them  'all of them'

     xelek------ xelk-o
     part     part-it  'part of it'

     rov------ rui-i
     most     most-me  'most of me'

SloSa------ SloSt-am  'three of them' (compare: bayt------ beet-am)
     three    three-them
     house    house-them
     their house'

(72) ha-kol        ha-rov
     the all     the most
     'everything' 'the most/majority'

The definite determiners ha- in Hebrew and 'a1- in Arabic, appear as proclitics on the complement of the head noun and on every postnominal modifier, as in (73). This can be taken to mean that the definite determiner doesn't occupy a syntactic position but, rather, definiteness is assigned as a feature like, say, gender, as proposed in Borer (1986b).

(73) beit ha-mora ha-telavivit ha-gvoha
     house the-teacher the-Tel-avivian the-tall
     'the tall Tel-Avivian teacher's house'

The definiteness feature, ha, can appear with demonstratives, which are presumably adjectives, unlike English, e.g.,
(74) a. ha-IS ha-ze
   *this man

Suppose, then, that Hebrew NP's do not have a SPEC position. We then predict that the ECP will be satisfied either when there is a clitic properly-governing the extraction site or if the extracted element leaves a trace adjoined to NP. This latter possibility is ruled out in the general case, since NP's are arguments and adjunction to arguments is disallowed. But in Hebrew, NP's can also be employed predicatively and it is precisely in such cases that extraction out of NP is possible, (as noted, originally, by E. Doron.) Contrast (75a) with (75b).27

(75) a. *Sel-mi ra'ita xaver?
    of-whom you saw friend
    'whose friend did you see?'

b. Sel mi Dani xaver?
    of-whom Dani friend
    'whose friend is Dani?'

---

26 This has obvious implications for the DP hypothesis of Abney (1987), which I will not explore. See Ritter (1986) for an application of the DP hypothesis to Hebrew construct-state NP's.

27 The ungrammaticality of (i) below, which is taken by Borer (1986b) to be an indication that the definite determiner ha- does block extraction, and consequently does occupy the [SPEC/NP] position, is somewhat misleading since, as noted in Rappoport (1987), for many speakers, predicate nominals cannot be definite, independently of extraction, (ii).

(i) *Sel mi ata ha-xaver
    of whom you the-friend

(ii) *Dani ha-xaver  (cf. Dani xaver)
    Dani the-friend
Moreover, the absence of a specifier position in NP explains why a non-specific NP, such as a picture in (76b) manifests the same ungrammaticality as the definite (76a). The unacceptability of both (76a) and (76b) are to be attributed to the ECP.

---

28 Borer (1986b) provides the following contrast as evidence for an (LF) specificity effect. (i) can be interpreted with three people exercising wide scope; (ii) cannot be so interpreted. This may be taken as an indication for the existence of a specificity effect in Hebrew, allowing extraction out of (non-specific) NP but disallowing it in specific NP’s, i.e., those NP’s the SPEC of which is filled. But then it is not clear why the contrast does not extend to the other cases discussed.

(i)  
yad-am₁ Sel SloSa anaSim₁ hurma be-mexa’a  
hand-them of three people was raised in-protest  
‘hands of three people were raised in protest.’  
(three people, three hands.)

(ii) *ha-yad Sel SloSa anaSim hurma be-mexa’a  
the-hand of three people was raised in-protest  
(only available interpretation: three people, one hand.)

Notice, also, that the wide-scope reading for three people in (iii), which is structurally identical to like (i) except for the absence of the clitic -am, is unavailable. Borer assigns (iii) a ‘?’ and ranks it between (i) and (ii). To my ears, (iii) is as unacceptable as (ii), under the intended, wide-scope interpretation.

(iii)  
yad Sel-SloSa anaSim hurma be-mexa’a

The contrast between (i) and (iii) shows that the presence of the clitic at S-structure is relevant for the possibility of wide-scope interpretation. I have no explanation for this fact at present. Yet if the correct characterization of the facts is that (i) contrasts with (ii) and (iii), then clearly, the contrast has nothing to do with whether SPEC/NP is filled or not.
a. *Sel mi raita et ha-tmuna
   'of whom did you see the picture'

b. *Sel mi raita tmuna
   'of whom did you see a picture'
Studies of subject inversion generally distinguish two types of inverted structures, (la) and (lb), (Burzio (1986), Chomsky (1981) and much other work.)

(1)  a.  
     IP
     /   
    NP   I'
         /   \  
        I    VP
         /   \  
        V    SUBJ

b.  
     IP
     /   
    NP   I'
         /   \  
        I    VP
         /   \  
        VP   SUBJ
         /   V  
        NP   

In (1a), the subject appears as sister to the verb, in the position occupied by objects of transitive verbs. In (1b), the subject is sister to VP and appears (Chomsky)-adjoined to it.
The purpose of this chapter is to explore aspects of these two configurations. I begin by presenting several diagnostics which can be used to distinguish them.

Section 4.3 gives a descriptive characterization of the conditions under which inversion is licensed in Hebrew.

In Section 4.4 I proceed to apply the diagnostics presented in 4.2 to Hebrew data, arguing that they pattern in a manner similar to those of Romance, in employing essentially two strategies of inversion, which yield the configurations (1a) and (1b), respectively.

The possibility that inversion of type (1b), or 'triggered' inversion, as I will call it, is the product not of adjunction of the subject to VP but rather of the preposing of V to a clause-initial position is then considered. I develop a number of arguments in favor of the view that triggered inversion is a form of subject postposing and not of verb preposing.

In 4.6, I show that the difference between Hebrew and Italian Free inversion lies in the place of attachment of the postverbal subject. In Hebrew, postverbal subjects are adjoined to the left of VP, in the general case and in Italian they are adjoined to VP on the right. Spanish, on the other hand, allows both options freely. The possibility of adjunction of a subject to the left of VP constitutes an argument in favor of amalgamating V and INFL by raising the verb into INFL and against lowering INFL to the verb. The argument is based on word order facts in languages such as Hebrew and Spanish.
4.7 correlates the difference between Hebrew/Spanish on the one hand and Italian, on the other, w.r.t. the place of attachment of a VP-joined subject with a number of other differences, chief among them being the distribution of the definiteness effect (DE) in inversion configurations.

Chapter 4 is concluded with a brief suggestion to extend the analysis of postverbal subjects to VSO languages in general.

4.2 Subjects Internal to VP and Subjects Adjoined to VP

Structure (1a) is correlated with sentences such as those in (2), i.e., where the verb belongs to the 'unaccusative' class, (2a), or (2b) where the verb in its passive state. Also correlated with this structure are cases of there-constructions in English with be and other unaccusative predicates, shown in (2c) as well as il-impersonalis in French, (2d).

(2) a. arriva un uomo
b. furono invitati molti esperti
c. there was a hippopotamus under my bed
d. il est arrivé trois hommes

Structure (1b) is associated with Romance 'free inversion', which effects all intransitive verbs and, somewhat marginally, transitive verbs in e.g., Italian, Spanish, Romanian, Catalan, Portuguese, (3a,b). French 'Stylistic Inversion', exemplified in (3c) has also been argued to give rise to a representation such as (1b) (Kayne and Pollock 1977).
Research of recent years has uncovered many regularities associated with the classes of unaccusative and unergative verbs or of subclasses thereof in a variety of languages. I will review three correlations, which have or can be used to distinguish the two inversion configurations, (1a) and (1b) above. The three processes I have in mind are the cliticization of the pronoun ne in Italian, the distribution of the possessive dative le in Hebrew and the distribution of the DE. I present a short summary of each.

'ne'-Cliticization

Quantified NP’s can be pronominalized, in Italian, by means of the pronoun ne, meaning 'of it' or 'of them'. The pronoun is cliticized onto the verb, stranding a quantifier element (such as molto, poco, alcuno, due 'much/many', little/few. some, three'). Putting aside the exact characterization of 'ne-cliticization', it has been argued that the distribution of ne-C1 reflects structural differences which can be captured by the configurations in (1a,b) and cannot be attributed merely to lexical properties of the verb. Informally speaking, ne-C1 is restricted to apply only to direct objects, as shown in (4).

---

1 From Burzio (1986).
2 For discussion of ne-cl see Belletti & Rizzi (1981), Burzio (1986).
The possibility of ne-cl. in (4) can then be accounted for by assuming that the post-verbal NP's in (4) occupy the position of the direct-object. Specifically, inversion with verbs of the 'arrivare' class can be represented as (1a) above.

(5)  a. ne saranno invitati molti (subject of passive)
    of-them will be invited many

     b. ne arriveranno molti (subject of unaccusative)
      of-them will arrive many

The contrast between (5b) and the unacceptable (6) can be captured by assigning the structure in (1b) to (6) and that of (1a) to (5b).

(6)  *ne telefonavano molti
     of-them telephoned many

The inverted subject of an unaccusative verb such as 'arrivare' is said to occupy the D-structure direct object position whereas the inverted subject of a 'telefonare'-type verbs does not.
The Hebrew Possessive Dative 'le'

In the following sentences, the direct object NP must be interpreted as possessed by the dative NP.

(7) a. ha-yalda axla le-dan et ha-tap'ux
    the-girl ate to-Dan acc the-apple
    'The girl ate Dan's apple'

    b. ha-yeled Savar le-Ruti et ha-xalon
       the-boy broke to-Ruti the window
       'the boy broke Ruti's window'

    c. ha-kelev Saxav 1-i al ha-mita
       the-dog lay to-me on the-bed
       'the dog lay on my bed'

The possessive interpretation is obligatory even when the direct object is questioned, (8).

(8) a. et-ma ha-yalda axla le-Dan?
    acc-what the-girl ate to-Dan
    'What of Dan's did the girl eat?'

    b. eize-xalon ha-yeled Savar le-ruti?
       which window the-boy broke to-Ruti

    c. al-ma Saxav 1-i ha-kelev?
       on-what lay to-me the dog

---

3 Taken from Borer and Grodzinsky (1986), (B&G.)
Furthermore, a le-phrase can only possess VP-internal material; subjects cannot be possessed by a le-phrase. The sentences in (9) are good only when the PP is present.

(9)  a. ha-kelev Saxav le-ruti *(al ha-mita)
    *the dog lay to-Ruti *(on the-bed)

   b. ha-yalda yaSya l-i *(al ha-kise)
    *the-girl sat to-me *(on the-chair)

   c. ha-po'elim avdu le-Dan *(ba-xacer)
    *the-workers worked to-Dan *(in-the-yard)

B&G characterize these facts by means of the following descriptive statement.

(10) Possessive datives must c-command the possessed element or its trace

Interestingly, a class of non-transitive verbs seem to violate (10). All the sentences in (11) are grammatical under the intended, possessive reading. If it is supposed that these verbs are 'unaccusative', that is, generate their surface subjects in the position of the direct object, the generalization in (10) can be maintained.

(11)  a. ha-maftexot naflu l-i
    *the-keys fell to-me
    'my keys fell'

   b. ha-mixmasaiym nikre'u le-Dani
    *the-trousers tore to-Dani
    'Dani's trousers were torn'

   c. ha-pgiSa hit'axra l-i
    *the-meeting became late to-me
Since much of this chapter will be concerned with inversion constructions in Hebrew, let us, for now, merely note that postverbal subjects of unaccusative verbs may be interpreted as possessed by the dative NP, in conformity with the generalization in (10) and the structure in (1a), whereas inverted subjects of unergative verbs cannot be so interpreted. The datives in (12a) and in (13a) function as 'ethical' and not as a possessive datives. The unavailability of a possessive interpretation of the post-verbal subject in (12a), (13a) demonstrates that the postverbal subjects in these sentences are not c-commanded by the dative pronoun; hence, they cannot be inside the VP. 4

(12) a. *lo yaxolti le-hikanes ha-baita ki xanu 1-i tustusim neg I could to-enter the-house because parked to-me moped

'al ha-midrasha

on the-sidewalk

'I couldn't enter my house because mopeds were parked on the sidewalk and they blocked access to my house/it aggravated me.'

b. lo yaxolti le-hikanes ha-baita ki nafhu 1-i ha-maftexot neg I could to-enter the-house because fell to-me the -keys

'al ha-midrasha

on the-sidewalk

---

4 The ungrammaticality of (13a) below shows that the Hebrew verb le-hikanes ('enter') is not unaccusative, as pointed out to me by H. Borer (p.c.)
'I couldn't enter my house because my keys fell on the sidewalk.'

(13)  

a. *be-emca ha-seret nixmesu l-i yeladim ra'aSanim
   *in-middle the-movie entered to-me children noisy
   'In the middle of the movie (there) entered noisy children and it aggravated me'  

b. be-emca ha-seret nikre'u l-i ha-mixnasaiym
   in-middle the-movie tore to-me the -trousers
   'in the middle of the movie my pants tore'  

The Definiteness Effect

The definiteness effect (DE), to recall, refers to a restriction on a subclass of 'inverted' constructions in a variety of languages, according to which the post-verbal NP position can only be occupied by 'weak' NP's. Although there is a great deal of controversy in the current literature over the nature of the DE, most accounts agree that, descriptively speaking, the DE is restricted to effect subjects which appear underlyingly in the position of the Dir. Obj and does not effect NP's adjoined, say, to VP. To give an example, the DE appears with il-impersonals in French but is suspended with stylistically-inverted subjects. It is not surprising, given the correlation between the DE and the placement of the postverbal subject, that il-impersonals are restricted to verbs of the 'unaccusative' variety whereas
'Stylistic Inversion' can take place with all verb classes, in particular, with unaccusatives.5

(14) a. Il est arrivé un homme/*l'homme
    b. Quand est arrivé un homme/l'homme?

In (14a) the NP un homme occupies the direct object position and is, thus, subject to the DE. (14b), on the other hand, is not derived directly from (14a). Rather, the postverbal subject is first raised into the clausal subject position, where the DE does not apply. The wh-word quand triggers Stylistic Inversion, which then postposes the subject and adjoins it to VP.

Similarly, in English, we have seen that the DE appears in there-constructions with the verb be and with a class of verbals which Milsark (1974) termed 'inside' verbals. The DE is suspended in there-constructions with 'outside' verbals.

(15) a. There was a hippo/*the hippo in my bathtub
    b. There arose a terrible storm/*the terrible storm
    c. There hung on the wall a map of Palestine/the map of Palestine

The verb be as well as the 'inside' verbals were analyzed by Burzio (1986) as unaccusative, that is, as conforming to the structure in (1a), whereas

5 Pollock (1986) notes that il can also co-occur in contexts of Heavy NP Shift, as in (i) below. The impossibility of en-cliticization in (ii) shows that the postverbal NP beaucoup des linguistes is adjoined to VP.

(i) il a mangé dans ce restaurant beaucoup de linguistes
(ii) *il en a mangé...
Milsark's 'outside' verbals are VP-final and, hence, can be viewed as adjoined to VP, in conformity with (1b).

So far, we have reviewed three arguments for distinguishing two structures of subject inversion. The arguments were designed to motivate the assignment of structure (1a) to inversion with unaccusative and passive verbs. To complete the picture, we must now turn to an argument in favor of assigning structure (1b) to other instances of occurrences of inverted subjects.

**Extraction of Postverbal Subjects**

Rizzi (1982) observed that negative quantifier-like elements can be construed with a scope marker in a higher clause only when they appear in the inverted subject position. The contrast in (16) is commonly treated as a direct effect of the ECP. In the unacceptable case, the trace of the LF-extracted nessuno will not be c-commanded by a local antecedent and will hence fail to satisfy the ECP.

(16)  
   a. Non pretendo che ti arresti nessuno  
   b. *Non pretendo che nessuno ti arresti

As for the good case, (16a), several options may be considered. One position where the ECP would clearly be satisfied is the direct object position, which, as we have seen, may contain the subject of unaccusative and passive verbs.

---

6 Since I am assuming a different version of the ECP and a different characterization of empty categories from that of Rizzi (1982), I am taking the liberty of restating Rizzi's observation.
arrestare, however, is not such a verb, as can be learned from the impossibility of ne-cliticization. So structure (1a) must be ruled out for (16).

One configuration in which the ECP is satisfied is afforded by adjunction to VP, which was given as (1b) above and is repeated here as (17). In (17), the postverbal subject is properly governed by the preverbal null subject pro.

We can, thus, regard the extraction facts as arguing in favor of associating inversion with verbs which are not unaccusative, i.e., unergative and transitive, with structure (17).

(17)
4.3 A Description of Subject Inversion in Hebrew

The Descriptive Tools

One generalization which emerges in the study of postverbal subjects in Hebrew is that the degree to which inversion configurations are acceptable correlates with the degree to which the subject can be interpreted as new information introduced or presented into the discourse. Conversely, inversion is degraded in contexts where the subject is presupposed or where it constitutes old information.7

Before turning to the actual discussion of these phenomena, I introduce certain descriptive notions. Following Chomsky (1971), Jackendoff (1972), Guéron (1980), Horvath (1986), among others, let us suppose that the interpretation of sentences involves discourse-related notions such as focus and presupposition. Jackendoff ((1972), cited in Horvath (1986:93)) characterizes focus as "the information in the sentence that is assumed by the speaker not to be shared by him and the hearer" and presupposition as "the information in the sentence that is assumed by the speaker to be shared by the hearer." A focused element is thus the locus of new information whereas a presupposed element carries old information. Topicalized elements, as distinct from focalized ones, constitute, by and large, old information. Sentences will be said to be presentational when “the

7 I am indebted to A. Calabrese for discussion of this issue. His (1985) paper, which discusses similar phenomena in Italian was particularly illuminating for me. I am also indebted to A. Belletti for helpful discussions. In this and the following section, I rely heavily on Givón (1976) from which many of the data and observations are taken.
VP denotes, essentially, the appearance of the subject in the world of the discourse. *Predicative* sentences are those in which the subject "refers to an individual or object (or set of these) whose existence in the world of discourse is presupposed." (Guéron (1980:653)). Thus, the subjects of *presentational* sentences are focused whereas the subjects of *predicational* sentences are presuppositional or topicalized.

A word of caution is in order: These notions are notoriously imprecise and serve, at best, as rough descriptive generalizations. I will not attempt a more precise characterization and will continue to use them in a rough, descriptive way. Furthermore, these notions are relational, in that new information must be understood relative to something else in the clause which may be construed as presuppositional, and vice-versa. This already suggests an observation which will be of some importance in my discussion of the Hebrew data below: Subjects can be focalized either directly, by being assigned focal stress or moved to a position to which a focal interpretation is assigned or indirectly, by having their presuppositional character or topicality attenuated relative to another clausal element which is topicalized directly. Let me give an example of what I mean. In (18) below, the existence of some specific book is presupposed. This can be seen from (19). In order for a discourse to be 'natural' in Jackendoff's terms, successive sentences must share presuppositions. A pairing of (18) with (19a) results in a 'natural discourse' since both sentences share the presupposition of the existence of a specific book. A paring of (18) with (19b) is deemed unnatural because in (19b), the book is no longer presupposed, rather, the presupposition is that John asked Bill to tell his students to do something or other.
(18) this book, John didn’t ask Bill to get his students to read

(19) a. in fact, John asked him to get them to translate it to Latin
    b. in fact, John asked him to let them go home early

Going back to (18), notice that the Topicalization of the book has the consequence of indirectly focalizing the subject of the sentence, John. This can be seen by considering (20) which is also an appropriate response to (18).

(20) that’s right, Mary did (ask Bill to get his students to read such and such a book.)

VS order is acceptable in Hebrew to the degree that subject can be taken as new information. There are, roughly speaking, two ways in which the appropriate semantic/pragmatic context for inversion can be set up. The first is with the use of verbs of presentation, appearance, existence or change of state. These verbs are presentational by their very meaning and hence, their subjects may be naturally construed as 'new information'. These cases are discussed immediately below. Alongside this class of verbs, practically any non-presentational verb can admit of a postverbal subject but in the absence of inherent semantic features, various syntactic and discursive devices come into play to downplay the topicality of the subject and induce a presentational context. The most common strategy for downplaying the topicality of the subject in Hebrew is to topicalize another element, thereby reducing the relative topicality of the subject. This type of inversion, which I have chosen to term 'triggered inversion', is discussed in a later section. With verbs of a presentational nature, no 'trigger' is necessary although the presence of a trigger of some sort frequently renders VS order more
acceptable. This is particularly clear with non-existential presentational verbs (or 'presentational impersonals', as Safir (1985) calls them.)

It is important to draw a distinction between presentational vs. non-presentational verbs on the one hand and structural differences having to do with the placement of the postverbal subject, on the other. The property which distinguishes triggered from free inversion is a semantic/pragmatic one whereas the placement of the postverbal subject follows from the syntactic distinction drawn between unaccusative verbs on the one hand and other verb classes, on the other. I will show that 'triggered' inversion correlates with VP-adjunction of the postverbal subject. As for inversion which is not triggered, I will show that truly 'unaccusative' and passive verbs differ from unergative presentationals in that only the unaccusative ones generate their subjects VP-internally. The discussion of these syntactic properties will be carried out in section 4.4 where the diagnostics for 'unaccusativity' discussed in 4.2 will be employed and new ones introduced. I begin, however, with a discussion of inversion in presentational contexts.

**Inversion with Presentational Verbs**

As noted, the class of verbs which most readily admit of inverted subjects are verbs of existence, appearance, and more generally, verbs which introduce the subject into the discourse as new information rather than presuppose it or regard it as old information. Consider the examples in (21), where inversion is deemed perfectly natural.
(21) a. hay-u l-i bagrut 'ad Se-hitmalti le-hitmare'ax be-mic kiwi were to-me wounds adolescence until that-I began to smear-reflexive in-juice kiwi 'I used to have acne until I began to smear myself with kiwi juice'

b. kayam-im anaSim Se-mesugalim li-rcoax biSvil kesef exist-pl. people that-capable to-murder for money 'there exist people capable of murdering for money'

c. lo kayemet medina ka-zot state exist-sing.fem state like-that-fem 'there doesn't exist such a country'

d. xasar xelek ba-mexona missing-s.m. part-s.m. in-the-machine 'There is a piece missing in the machine'

e. xaia 'aliya ba-temperatura come about increase in-the-temperature 'the temperature has risen'

The shared semantic attribute of these predicates is that their grammatical subject is not presupposed but is introduced as 'new information'. The sentences in (21) are not predicational, in Guéron’s (1980) sense, in that they merely assert of the subject that is exists or that it fails to exist.

Alongside this class of existential verbs there is another class of intransitives which allows free, that is untriggered inversion:

(22) a. ne’elmu me-ha-sifriya SloSa kraxim Sel Brittanica disappeared from-the-library three volumes of Brittanica 'Three volumes of Brittanica disappeared from the library'
With regards to these verbs, the presentational meaning is strongest when the verb is in the past tense. There is a clear degradation in the acceptability of inversion when the present tense variant is employed, viz. (23), (and compare with (21) above, where tense plays no role.)

(23) a. ??magi'a do'ar
    arrives mail

b. ??mofl'a ktav-et
    appears journal

c. ??porec viku'ax
    breaks-out argument

The degradation is due to the attenuation of the presentational aspect of these verbs when they appear in the present tense. The sentences in (23) denote more of a habitual, continuous state of affairs, rather than a novel occurrence. Thus, for example, (23b) has the interpretation that a journal usually appears, not that it has just begun to appear and, in fact, inversion is
remedied when the habituality is made explicit, by, e.g., the addition of a pre-clausal temporal adjunct which assumes the pragmatic role of the presupposition, against which background, the subject can be taken as new information.\(^6\)

(24) a. be-Sa'ā Smone magl'a ha-do'ar
    at-hour eight arrives the-mail
    'at eight o'clock the mail arrives'

b. kol Savu'a mofi'a ktav-ēt (xadaS)
    every week appears journal (new)
    'every week a new journal appears'

c. hu rak niinas la-xeder ve-kvar porec viku'ax
    he only comes into-the-room and-already breaks-out argument
    'he just comes into the room and already an argument breaks out'

This class of intransitives, some of which are unaccusative (e.g. 'fall', 'become numb') others which are not, are presentational under certain circumstances. We may view them as an intermediate case between the free inversion of true existentials and triggered inversion. Alternatively, one might consider the past tense specification necessary for their 'free' inversion as a trigger of sorts, a deictic temporal element which is topicalized, thus setting-up a presuppositional context for the inverted subject.

It is interesting, in this context, to consider the verb 'telephone', since it has often appeared in the literature as a prototypical unergative verb, minimally differing from an ergative intransitive such as 'arrive'.

\(^6\) On the suspension of the definiteness effect in (25), see ahead, 4.8.
This verb readily permits a postverbal subject, as in (25).

(25) tifen avi-\text{-}xa
telephoned father\text{-}yours
'your father called'

Note that 'telephone' is ambiguous between a presentational predicate and a verb reporting an action.\textsuperscript{9} Consider the following two contexts.

(26) a. The telephone rings. Someone answers and later reports to me that your father telephoned.

b. Someone asks what your father did and I answer: "Your father telephoned".

The first context is the presentational one, in which your father's telephoning is a form of appearance. In Hebrew, as in English, the sentence 'your father telephoned' with S-V order is ambiguous between (26a) and (26b). The reverse order forces the first, presentational reading. While the sentence in the S-V order can occur with a 'goal' PP, as in (27a) below, the PP may not co-occur with the V-S order, as shown by the unacceptability of (27b).

(27) a. avi-\text{-}xa tilfen le-Dan
father\text{-}yours telephoned to-Dan
'your father called Dan'

b. ??tilfen avi-\text{-}xa le-Dan

\textsuperscript{9} I am grateful to H. Borer for pointing out these facts to me.
The PP in (27) places the 'report' interpretation in relief and downplays the presentational one. The most natural interpretation of (27a) is of an utterance made by a person present in the location from where the telephone call was initiated whereas (25) above, with the VS order, is most naturally interpreted as an utterance on the part of someone on the receiving end of the telephone call.\textsuperscript{10}

As noted above, one property of these presentational constructions is that the grammatical subject is introduced, presented or brought into existence. Whenever a predicational interpretation looms in the foreground, SV order is judged preferable to VS order. In (28) below, both VS and SV order are acceptable when the subject is animate, yet in (29), where the subject is inanimate, there is preference for a postverbal subject, (Givón's (18-19).)

(28)  a. ba'a elay etmol iSa axat
       came to-me yesterday woman one
       'some woman came to me yesterday'

     b. iSa axat ba'a elay etmol
       woman one came to-me yesterday

(29)  a. ba'a elay etmol telegrama dxufa
       came to-me yesterday telegram urgent
       'an urgent telegram came to me yesterday'

     b. ??telegrama dxufa ba'a elay etmol
       telegram urgent came to-me yesterday

\textsuperscript{10} The same observations hold of the Italian verbs 'telefonare', 'parlare', 'esclamare' which are unergative (i.e., they take the auxiliary 'avere', and do not permit ne-cliticization, two well-known characteristics of unergativity as opposed to unaccusativity in Italian,) yet invert with the same freedom as ergative verbs such as 'arrivare'.

As Givón points out, it is not the human/non-human dichotomy which is relevant but rather the active agent/non-agentive one, for even when there is a human subject but the verb clearly denotes an involuntary action, VS order is favored.

(30)  

a. nafal Sam iS exad le-tox ha-te'ala  
    fell there man one into-the-ditch  
    'some man fell into the ditch over there'  

b. 7aS exad nafal Sam le-tox ha-te'ala  
    man one fell there into the ditch.

It follows from the discussion above that intransitive action verbs, such as verbs of motion, which are clearly predicational in nature will not permit inversion. This is illustrated in (31).

(31)  

??racu / haixu / ca'adu /kipcu SloSa yeladim le-bet ha-sefer  
    ran/walked/marched/hopped three-children to school  

There is a sense in which a sentence like 'ran three children to school' is presentational even though VS order is unacceptable. It seems to me, however, that the 'appearance' meaning of such a sentence is derivative, an extension of the primary sense of 'run', which denotes an action predicated of an agent and not merely an affected subject. In this respect, the verbs in (31) differ from presentational intransitives, such as 'telephone' in (25) above in that verbs like 'telephone' are presentational in a primary, underived sense.

Inversion with Passive Verbs
Passive verbs, like unaccusatives, admit of postverbal subjects even in the absence of a trigger.

(32) a. ne'ezal le-Ruti ha-kiwi
    was-eaten to-Ruti the kiwi
    'R.'s kiwi was eaten'

b. nignevu le-Arie kol ha-maxbarot
    were-stolen to-Arie all the notebooks
    'All of A.'s notebooks were stoken'

c. Sulma agrat televiziya
    was-paid tax-television
    'a television tax has been paid'

d. nirSema aliya ba-laxut
    was-registered an increase in-the-humidity
    'an increase in the humidity was registered'

However, VS order is far less acceptable when the agent is specified.

Compare (33) with VS order and (34) with SV order.

(33) a. *ne'ezal le-Ruti ha-kiwi al-yedei ha-zatul
    was-eaten to-Ruti the kiwi by-the-cat
    'R.'s kiwi was eaten by the cat'

b. *nignevu le-Arie kol ha-maxbarot al yedei talmidim me-hakita
    were-stolen to-Arie all the notebooks by-the-students from-the-class
    'All of A.'s notebooks were stoken by the students in the class'

(34) a. ha-kiwi Sel Ruti ne'ezal al-yedei ha-zatul
    the-kiwi of Ruti was-eaten by-the-cat

b. kol ha-maxbarot Sel Arie nignevu al yedei talmidim me-hakita
    All the-notebooks of Arie were-stolen by-the-students from-the-class
The interference of an overt agent with VS order requires some explanation because the semantic relationship between the verb and the grammatical subject of these passives seems to be unaffected by the presence of an overt agent. But this is not entirely true, however because the 'by'-phrase typically is the most highly focused element in the clause. In (33a) above, it is the cat which is focalized, introduced as new information. This has the effect of interpreting the kiwi as presupposed, as old information and this directly decreases its acceptability as a postverbal subject. In the absence of an overt 'by'-phrase, (36a) is a possible continuation to (35a), under the presupposition that something or other of Ruti's was eaten. When an agent is specified, however, as it is in (35b), (36a) is inappropriate since the NP kiwi is no longer the focus of the sentence but constitutes part of it's presupposition, namely, that someone ate Ruti's kiwi. As a result, a more natural response to it is (36b).

(35) a. lo ne'exal le-Ruti ha-kiwi
eeg was-eaten to-Ruti the kiwi
'R.'s kiwi was not eaten'

b. lo ne'exal le-Ruti ha-kiwi al-yedei ha-zatul
neg was-eaten to-Ruti the kiwi by the-cat
'R.'s kiwi was not eaten by the cat

(36) a. ne'exal la ha-tapu'ax
was eaten to-her the-apple
'her apple was eaten'

b. ki 'im al-yedei ha-kelev
rather by the-dog
'rather, by the dog'
Another factor which influences VS order, especially in cases where the core meaning of the verb is not presentational, as in passives of action verbs, is the presence of some deictic element in the clause. Thus, (32) above fare less well when the possessive dative is absent. The presence of the dative sets up what Givón has termed a *relevance link* by establishing a spatio/temporal presupposition with which the new participant can be connected.

To conclude, I have discussed the relevance of presentationality to the acceptability of VS order. The ability to cast the postverbal subject in the role of a new participant seems to be the factor which most clearly influences the acceptability of the inverted order.

**Triggered Inversion**

Alongside these cases of what we can loosely term 'free' inversion, as the Romance linguists have termed a similar phenomenon in the Romance null-subject languages, postverbal subjects are permitted in Hebrew under an overt 'trigger'. As in the case of 'free inversion', the process is optional, although pragmatic factors, such as those discussed, may induce a preference for one type of order over another. As noted in Borer (1984), the trigger may be an adverb, (37a), a wh-word, (37b), a fronted pronoun, (37c), or prepositional phrase, (37d). A complementizer (Se or 'im,) does not suffice to trigger inversion, (37e), neither does a wh-trace in COMP, (37f). In addition, clefts, such as (37g) license inversion.11

11 See Borer (1984b) for a discussion of these facts in a different context.
In all these cases, the 'trigger' is a topic of some sort, a presupposition. As a consequence, the 'relative topicality' of the subject, in Givon's terms, is decreased and made to conform to the generalization of the previous section, namely, that subjects must constitute 'new information' in order to be permitted in the postverbal position. In (37a), a temporal adverb permits inversion by setting-up a temporal situation into which the postverbal

\[\text{(37)}\]

a. \textit{kol boker} metapes/tipes Dan al ha-har

\textit{every morning, climbs /climbed D. up the mountain}

'every morning, D. climbs/climbed the mountain'

b. \textit{be-eize Sa'a} metapes Dan al ha-har?

\textit{at what time \text{climbs D. up the mountain}}

'at what time does D. climb the mountain?'

c. \textit{ze ha-har Se-oto ro'e Dan mi-ba'ad la-xalon}

\textit{this the mountain that-it sees Dan through the window}

'this is the mountain that D. sees through the window'

d. \textit{ze ha-har Se-'alav metapes Dan bi-yemei xamSi}

\textit{this the mountain that-on it climbs Dan on Thursdays}

'this is the mountain that D. climbs on Thursdays'

e. \textit{*lo yada-ti Se / 'im metapes Dan 'al ha-har}

'I didn't know that, if \text{climbs D. up the mountain}

'I didn't know that, if D. climbs the mountain'

f. \textit{*al ma\text{i\_}zaSav-ta \{CP t\_ Se- \{IP metapes Dan t\_ \}}}

\textit{on what did you think \{CP t that \{IP climbs Dan t \}\}}

'\text{on what did you think that D. climbs?}'

g. \textit{ze haya ha-har ha-ze Se-ra'a Dan mi-ba'ad la-xalon}

\textit{it was the-mountain this that-saw Dan through the window}

'it was this mountain that D. saw through the window'

\[\text{\textsuperscript{12} W.r.t inversion underneath a wh-word, see ahead, p.153.}\]
subject may be introduced as a new participant. In (37c) and (37d), a
fronted and topicalized pronoun or PP is accented. It is precisely because
the topicalized element must be construed as old information in order to
permit VS order, that syncategorematic elements such as complementizers
and elements which are phonetically-null cannot induce inversion, since they
lack any semantic content.

Borer (1984) also notes that even when a pronoun is not fronted, inversion is
nonetheless acceptable in relative clauses. Thus, alongside (37c), we have
(38).

(38) *ze ha-har Se-ro'e Dan mi-ba'ad la-xalon
    this the mountain that sees Dan through the window
    'this is the mountain that D. sees through the window'

It is interesting, however, that inversion cannot take place in lower clauses,
even if relativization is of a deeply embedded NP as in (39).

(39) *ze ha-har Se-amar Xanan Se-ro'e Dan mi-ba'ad la-xalon
    this the mountain that-said Xanan that sees Dan through the window
    'this is the mountain that Hanan said that D. sees through the window'

Now, if we wish to maintain the generalization that inversion is sensitive to
an overt trigger, some explanation must be devised to account for (38).
Borer’s explanation is that the relative pronoun, oto in (41c) is first fronted
into COMP, triggering inversion and then optionally deleted. Deletion is only
possible, she claims, in the topmost COMP. In Shlonsky (forthcoming), I
argue that the fronted pronoun is not in COMP in (37c), but, rather, is
topicalized and adjoined to IP. I also argue against an analysis of movement
and deletion for relative clauses. My account for the the fact that inversion
is possible in (38), is that the relative head itself is the trigger for inversion since it is the locus of focus in the sentence and allows the postverbal subject to be downplayed.\footnote{One set of problems for the account in the text, is that inversion seems to be licensed even when the trigger does not create a presupposition, as is illustrated in (i).}

**Inversion Beneath a WH-word**

Consider, now, inversion triggered by a WH-word. It is generally assumed that the fronted WH-word is focused, not hypothesized. It ranges over a set of possible answers, all of which constitute new information. Given the generalization that VS order is acceptable only when the subject is not construed as old information, these cases are problematic. I will assume

\begin{itemize}
  \item a. \textit{be-meSex kol nayav, in-duration all life-his}
    \textit{all his life,} \quad \textit{lo azav Kant et Koenigsburg neg left Kant acc Koenigsburg K. never left Koenigsburg'}
  \item b. \textit{lo axal Dan suSi kol kax tari neg ate D. sushi so fresh D. hasn't eaten such fresh sushi'}
  \item c. \textit{lo Sama Smuel negina neg heard Shmuel playing ko yafa so beautiful 'Shmuel never heard such beautiful playing'}
\end{itemize}

The trigger in (i), is, however, assigned stress. This suggests that intonational criteria enter into the determination of wellformedness of inversion constructions, above and beyond their semantic import. I leave this and related questions for further research.
that, in fact, the trace of wh-movement is the focalized element, not the wh-phrase itself, which can serve as a TOPIC licensing inversion.

This concludes my discussion of the considerations that influence, indeed license VS word order. It should, perhaps, be added that these pragmatic restrictions are characteristic of present-day colloquial and informal written Hebrew. In the formal, literary idiom as well as in the revivalist dialect of the early days of Modern Hebrew, VS order was less restricted and more common.

In the remainder of this thesis, my strategy will be to idealize inversion and assume that it is always possible in principle. Such idealization is standard practice in syntax, where the boundaries between 'grammar' and language use are often not self-evident and must be drawn and redrawn as our understanding of these questions deepens. It is plausible, I think to view VS order as licensed both by principles of grammar and by principles of discourse. In this thesis, I explore what a grammar needs to specify in order to make VS order, or inversion, possible. The principles of discourse grammar which apply to inversion will not be studied further in this work.

4.4 The Two Inversion Strategies in Hebrew

In the previous section, I demonstrated that VS order in Hebrew is permitted in sentences with verbs which are presentational by nature and, more generally, when an appropriate presentational context is established, generally by means of topicalizing another element in the clause and thereby reducing the relative topicality of the subject.
In this section, I discuss the placement of postverbal subjects in Hebrew. I will show that Hebrew unaccusative and passive verbs generate their subjects in the position of the direct object while inversion with presentational intransitives (e.g. telephone) and 'triggered' inversion involves a VP-adjoined subject.

It is of some interest, I believe, that this bifurcation, familiar from studies of Romance syntax, is found in a language such as Hebrew which is typologically remote from, say, Italian. This fact suggests that the characteristic properties of inversion follow from universal parameters which cut across typological classes of languages.

The Distribution of the Possessive Dative

Consider, then, VS order with unaccusative predicates, as in (40).

(40) a. nik'r'a l-i zug mixmasalym
tore to-me pair pants
'a pair of pants of mine tore'

b. ne'elam l-i otek Sel Bariers

disappeared to-me copy of Barriers
'my copy of 'Barriers' has disappeared'

c. nirdema le-Rina regel

became numb to-Rina a foot
'Rina's foot became numb'

In section 4.2, I discussed a number of diagnostic tests for determining whether a postverbal subject appears inside VP or adjoined to it. One of
those tests showed that VP-internal subjects must be interpreted as possessed by a (non-subcategorized) dative PP whereas VP-adjoined subjects may not. As can be seen from the glosses for (40) above, the possessive interpretation is forced. The dative in sentence (41) below, for example, cannot be merely 'ethical' w.r.t. the speaker, even when mention is made of an explicit possessor; (41) cannot have the interpretation of (i), but only that of (ii).

(41) naflu 1-i ha-maftexot Sel Dani 'al ha-ricpa
    fell to-me the-keys of Dani on the-floor

    (i) *Dani’s keys fell on the floor (and it affected me)
    (ii) ‘my set of Dani’s keys fell on the floor’

By the same test, passive verbs can be shown to have VP-internal subjects as well.

(42) a. ne’exal le-Ruti ha-kiwi
    was eaten to-Ruti the-kiwi
    ‘Ruti’s kiwi was eaten’

b. nignevu le-Arie kol ha-masbarot
    were-stolen to Arie all the notebooks
    ‘All of Arie’s notebooks were stolen’

The diagnostic afforded by the possessive dative is only applicable, however, to a subclass of passives, those where the postverbal NP can be naturally possessed. Where possession is unnatural, the dative induces a different meaning. In (43a) below, the dative is more readily interpreted as benefactive than as possessive and in (43b) it picks out the subcategorized dative NP as the one possessed, presumably because of the fact that of the
two potential candidates, 'house' and 'damage', the first more readily admits of possession.

(43)  

- a. Sulma 1-a agrat ha-televiziya  
  *was paid to-her tax the-television  
  'the television tax was paid on her behalf'  

- b. nigram 1-i nezek la-mexonit  
  *was caused to-me damage to-the-car  
  'my car was damaged'

The Distribution of the Reflexive Dative

There is, however, another diagnostic test, also due to B&G, which can be utilized to establish the position of the postverbal NP in these sentences. Alongside its appearance as a possessive, the Hebrew dative can function as a reflexive element, appearing obligatorily in the form of a clitic, unlike possessive datives which may be clitics as well as full NP's.\(^{14}\) In (44), (B&G's (8),) the '*' does not indicate ungrammaticality but unavailability of the reflexive reading.\(^{15}\)

(44)  

- a. ha-yalda\(\_\) axla 1-a\(\_\)/le-Rina et ha-tapu'ax  
  *the-girl ate to-her/to-Rina acc the-apple  
  'the girl ate the apple'  

- b. ha-yeled\(\_\) Savar 1-o\(\_\)/le-Dani xalonot le-hana'ato  
  *the-boy broke to-him/to-Dani windows for-pleasure his  
  'the boy was engaged in window breaking'

\(^{14}\) The function of datives as reflexive clitics was originally discussed in Berman (1981) where numerous other functions played by the Hebrew datives are distinguished.

\(^{15}\) There is no Binding principle B violation in (44) because the reflexive dative does not occupy an argument position.
A. *ha-yeladim naflu la-hem
the-keys fell to-them
'the keys fell'

b. *ha-xaloni nisbar la-o
the window broke to-it
'the window broke'

c. *ha-pgiSai hukdema la-ai
the.meeting was-advance to-it
'the meeting was advanced'

d. *ha-uga la ne'esla la-ai
the.cake was-ate to-her
'the cake was eaten'

Unergative intransitives are perfectly compatible with the reflexive dative, an indication that the restriction cannot be stated in terms of transitivity. Rather, the relevant factor seems to be the presence of an external θ-role.

B&G propose the following descriptive rule.
Reflexive datives must be coindexed with an argument bearing an external θ-role.

In this respect, the reflexive dative is the complement of the possessive dative in that the latter requires an internal argument to be linked to. The prediction we can now make is that if the subject of a passive verb occupies the VP-internal position, where an internal θ-role is assigned, it will be incompatible with the reflexive clitic. Consider (47).

(47) a.  *ne’ezal i-o i ha-kiwij
      was eaten to-it the-kiwi
      'the kiwi was eaten'

b.  *nignevu la-henij kol ha-maxbarotij
    were-stolen to them all the notebooks
    'All of the notebooks were stolen'

c.  *Sulma l-ai agrat ha-televiziya\i
    was paid to-it tax the-television
    'the television tax was paid'

d.  *nigram i-oij /l-aj nezekij la-mexonitij
    was caused to-it damage to-the-car
    'the car was damaged'

Triggered Inversion

---
16 This is not entirely precise since the restrictions on the possessive dative are structural (i.e., c-command) while the reflexive dative is sensitive to lexical properties such as the specification of an 'external' θ-role.
Let us now employ the dative diagnostic to 'triggered' VS order in sentences with unergative verbs. Consider (48). These examples illustrate the fact that the reflexive dative may be linked to a postverbal subject, nonwithstanding the reversal of the linear order of the subject and the verb. This is not a surprising result, given (46), since the subject of these verbs bears the external θ-role and the VP-adjoined position may be a θ-position.

(48) a. lamrot ha-dieta, zolel l-oı̂ Smuelı burekas gvina
despite the-diet devoures to-him Smuel cheese-pies
'despite the diet, Smuel devoures cheese-pies'

b. ze ha-kelev Se-ito tiyel l-oı̂ Danı be-
this the-dog that-with-him promenaded to-him Dan on
'this is the dog with which Dan took a walk on
Sabat
'Saturday'

Saturday'

c. kol erev axarei ha-avoda xozeret l-ai Sulaı le-ı̂ta ha-bayta
every evening after the-work returns to-her Sula slowly home
'every evening after work, Sula returns home slowly'

To conclude, on the basis of the diagnostics afforded by datives in Hebrew, we can establish that postverbal subjects of unaccusative verbs and passives

17 There is some semantic or pragmatic incompatibility between VS order and the reflexive dative. The dative effects a subtle change of meaning in the verbs, "...giving a clear imperfective flavor to the predicates with which they are associated." (B&G, p.14). This sense of an on-going activity conveyed by the attachment of the reflexive dative conflicts with the presentational aspect of VS order, rendering it somewhat unnatural. The status of the sentences in (48) is, thus, somewhat idealized for the purpose of this discussion.
are VP-internal and correlate with structure (1a) while postverbal subjects of unergative and transitive verbs do not. W.r.t the latter, there are two logical possibilities: Either the subject remains in place in [SPEC/IP] and the verb is raised around it, or the subject is postposed and adjoined to VP. Note, also that these two options are not mutually exclusive: It is possible that both verb-preposing and subject postposing take place in the same sentence.

At this juncture, I have no evidence that verb-preposing (V-P) does not take place. The thrust of the next section is to demonstrate that the subject, in 'triggered inversion', is, nonetheless, postposed and does not appear in [SPEC/IP].

4.5 Triggered Inversion: Verb Preposing or Subject Postposing?

Consider, first, a sentence such as (49a). In the subject postposing account which I will develop in the coming pages, (49a) is assigned the S-structure (49b), in which the subject is adjoined to VP on the left and the verb raised to INFL.

(49) a. xaSavti Se-kol boker metapes Dan 'al ha-har
   I thought that—every morning climbs Dan the—mountain

   b. I thought [CP that [IP every morning [IP pro1 I-climbs [VP Dan [VP
   t\_v the mountain]]]]]

   c. I thought [CP that [IP every morning [IP climbs [IP Dan [VP t\_v the
   mountain]]]]]

---

16 Verb-preposing is argued for, under slightly different assumptions, in Doron (1983).
d. I thought \( [\text{CP} \text{that} \text{every morning} [\text{IP} \text{climbs} [\text{IP} \text{Dan} [\text{VP} \text{t}\text{v} \text{the mountain}]])]] \)

In a theory espousing verb-preposing, it is not clear where the verb is to be attached. Insofar as the surface ordering of the constituents is an indication for syntactic structure, it appears that the verb is adjoined to IP, in a structure such as (49c). It is far from clear, however, how such a structure is derived. Is the verb first adjoined to IP and then the trigger is moved and adjoined to IP forming another IP segment? Or does the trigger move into COMP and the verb adjoins to IP, as in (49d)? If inversion were restricted to root sentences, one could argue that Hebrew manifests the Germanic V-2 phenomenon, or some variation thereof, but this is much less tenable w.r.t. embedded contexts where the trigger appears between the verb and the complementizer. It should be noted that inversion is as acceptable in embedded contexts as it is in root ones, (provided there is an appropriate trigger.)

Moreover, what of sentences such as (50), in which several adverbs appear between the complementizer and the verb? Under a subject postposing account, these sentences are all assigned structures similar to (49b.) A verb-preposing would be hard-pressed to account for this data.

(50) amru 1-i Se-etmol be-Sa’a SeS lamrot
     said-3pl to-me that-yesterday at-hour six despite

     cfirat ha-az’aka tipes Dan ‘al ha-har
     hoot the-alarm climbed Dan on the-mountain

'I was told that yesterday, at six o’clock, despite the hoot of the alarm,丹 climbed the mountain'
Weak Crossover

Consider the following paradigm of facts from the domain of weak crossover (wco.)

(51) a. \(\text{mi}_j \space \text{t}_j \space \text{loves} \space \text{parents} \cdot \text{his}_j \space \text{more than} \cdot \text{everybody}?\)
    "who \(j\) loves his \(j\) parents more than anybody else?"

b. \(\text{*et mi}_j \space \text{parents} \cdot \text{his}_j \space \text{love} \cdot \text{t}_j \space \text{more than} \cdot \text{everybody}?\)

c. \(\text{et mi}_j \space \text{loves} \cdot \text{parents} \cdot \text{his}_j \space \text{t}_j \space \text{more than} \cdot \text{everybody}?\)

---

19 These facts were brought to my attention by Hagit Borer, (p.c.) The same array of judgments extends to w.c.o effects with quantifiers, although judgment on these sentences is harder to elicit, for reasons I do not understand.

(i) \(\text{kol yeled}_i \space \text{gave} \cdot \text{present} \cdot \text{teacher} \cdot \text{him}\)
    "every child gave a present to his teacher"

(ii) \(\text{zohi ha-matana} \space \text{Se-ha-ganenet} \space \text{natna} \space \text{le-kol yeled}_i\)
    "this is the present that his teacher gave to every child"

(iii) \(\text{zohi ha-matana} \space \text{natna} \space \text{ganenet} \space \text{le-kol yeled}_i\)
    "this the-present that gave the teacher of-him to-every child"

same as (ii)
(51b) is a paradigmatic wco case: The possessive pronoun his cannot be interpreted as bound by the question operator who. Notice, now, that when the subject appears after the verb, the bound reading of the pronoun is felicitous, albeit marginally less so than in (51a), where the variable appears to the left of the verb, presumably in [SPEC/IP]. If the VS order in (51b) and (51c) were derived merely by preposing the verb, the contrast between the two sentences would remain mysterious for, on all accounts, V-P ought not to effect a binding relationship among noun phrases, the relative position of which has not been altered. If, however, the postverbal subject in (51c) does not occupy the [SPEC/IP] position, but rather, is adjoined to VP, we have, at least, the beginnings of an explanation.

I argue that (51c) must be represented as (52). The verb is in INFL and the subject is adjoined to VP on the left.\(^{20}\)

\[(52) \text{ who}\_1 [\text{IP pro}_1 [\text{I'} \text{love}_1 [\text{VP parents-his}_1 [\text{VP t}_v \text{ t}_i ]] \text{ more than anybody else?}]]\]

Of course, we must still provide an analysis for these facts since they don't fall out from any of the existing proposals. In the next section I digress to present how I intend to deal with wco.

\[^{20}\text{Note, again, that V-P is not ruled out. If V is, indeed preposed, then (51c) can also be represented as (i), where V, 'love' has raised into I and then into C.}\]

\[(i) \text{ [CP who}_1 \text{love}_1 [\text{IP pro}_1 [\text{I'} \text{t}_v \text{ t}_i ] [\text{VP [his}_1 \text{parents}_1] [\text{VP t}_v \text{ t}_i ]]] \text{ more than anybody else?}]]\]
Treatments of Weak-Crossover

There are, grossly speaking, two approaches in the current literature to the phenomenon of wco, exemplified in the English example (55).

(53) *who_i does his_i mother love?

The first approach attributes this phenomenon to a violation of some condition on operator binding stated on LF representations. One such LF-oriented analysis is the Bijection Principle (BP) of Koopman and Sportiche (1983). Another proposal, along similar lines, has been made by Safir (1984)- the Parallelism Constraint on Operator Binding (PCOB) and there are certainly others.21

The second approach to wco views it as being essentially an S-structure effect related to the absence of c-command between the antecedent and the bound pronoun, ((Reinhart (1982), Haik (1984).)

Consider, first, the proposal of Koopman and Sportiche (1983). Their BP states:

(54) Bijection Principle (Koopman & Sportiche p.146)
There is a bijective correspondence between variables and A'-positions.

The idea of the BP is that in a structure such as (55) below, the operator binds two variables, the trace of the operator itself and the pronoun. (55) violates the BP.

(55) who_i [...x_1...x_i...]

The PCOB of Safir was designed to improve upon some cases, specifically in parasitic gap constructions, where the BP was shown to make wrong predictions. The PCOB states:

(56) **Parallelism Constraint on Operator Binding** (Safir's (6))

If O is an operator and x is a variable bound by O, then for any y, y a variable of O, x and y are [+pronominal].

The PCOB basically says that when two variables are bound by a single operator, they may either be both [+pronominal] or [-pronominal]. Mixes of the two are not allowed. This has the consequence of admitting multiple variable binding in parasitic gaps and ruling it out in weak crossover cases.

Reinhart's and Haik's view of who is that the phenomenon is related not to A'-binding by an operator but rather to anaphoric binding by an antecedent in an A- position at S-structure. Reinhart's condition on bound pronominal anaphora is given below.22

(57) **Condition on Bound Pronominal Anaphora** (Reinhart, p.122)

Quantified NP's and wh-traces can have anaphoric relations only with pronouns in their c-command domain.

22 **Haik's (1984) Condition on Variables** says the same thing, i.e. "X binds Y... only if X c-commands Y at S-structure (Haik, op.cit, p.211.)"
Under this condition, (53) above is ruled out because in the (simplified) representation (58), $t_i$ does not c-command the pronoun.

(58) \textit{whoi} [IP [NP his$_i$ mother]...[VP loves $t_i$]]

In (59) below, by contrast, the trace does c-command the pronoun, yielding the bound interpretation.

(59) \textit{whoi} $t_i$ loves his$_i$ mother?

This latter approach differs from that of Koopman and Sportiche and of Safir in that the condition is stated in terms of the c-command relations between arguments at S-structure and not as a condition on A'-binding.

**Back to Hebrew**

Let us turn back to the Hebrew data. Recall that we are trying to account for the considerable improvement in a bound interpretation of a postverbal pronominal subject. Whether one chooses an operator-binding approach to \textit{wco} or an S-structure oriented one, one must, willy nilly, admit that a binding relationship holds between the direct object in (5 1c) and the postposed subject. This is an unwelcome result, because it obliterates the subject-object asymmetries the bulk of which can rather naturally be accommodated by the assumption that subjects may not be bound by objects.

Reconsidering the paradigm of data in (5 1), we see that in fact (5 1c) is somewhat marginal in comparison with (5 1a). An adequate theory of \textit{wco} must account for the tripartite distinction corresponding to the three cases in
(51). (51a) is an uncontroversial case, for under any plausible binding theory, subjects must be able to bind objects. Similarly, (51b) must be excluded by any reasonable theory. This leaves (51c). If one were to say that in (51c), the postverbal subject is bound (hence, c-commanded) by the object, the different status of (51a) and (51c) would remain unexplained. Intuitively, what needs to be said is that although the object does not c-command the postverbal subject in (51c), the relationship between the two NP's is 'closer' than that of an object and a preverbal subject. Let us label 0-command the command of a clausal subject in [SPEC/IP] by a direct object. 0-command characterizes the opposite, if you will, of c-command. It is quite plausible that between a c-command relation restricted, say, to a domain defined by an immediately dominating branching node and 0-command, lies a graded continuum which could be correlated with increasingly degraded referential dependency, under ideal conditions. After all, no particular notion of hierarchical proximity is, in any a-priori sense, more basic than any other; the question of which hierarchical relations are grammatically significant in yielding the correct domain for referential dependency is an empirical one.

The object in (51c) neither c-commands the postverbal subject (in the sense attributed to Reinhart (1976)) nor m-commands it (in Chomsky's (1986b) sense). It does, however, stand in a relation which we can define as z-command:

(60) \[ z\text{-command}_{df.} = \text{A node } \alpha \text{ z-commands a node } \beta \text{ iff for every maximal projection } \gamma \text{ dominating } \alpha \text{ there is at least one segment of } \gamma \text{ dominating } \beta. \]
The condition on wco, be it LF-oriented or S-structure oriented can now be restated in terms of z-command, where the less restricted domain defined by this relation is predicted to yield marginal yet not entirely unacceptable binding dependencies.23

This completes the digression on wco. To recapitulate, the main point I am trying to make is that even if V-P did take place, the clausal subject must still be permitted to invert. In the next section, I briefly discuss a similar case in Spanish.

Weak Crossover and Inversion in Spanish

One of the better known proposals concerning V-P was made in Torrego (1984) for Spanish. Torrego assumes that the preposed verb is adjoined to S (=IP). She also assumes that the preposed verb properly-governs the subject, thereby accounting for long-distance extractions of subjects from a position that would, in the absence of V-P, not be a licit extraction site. Thus, her approach conflicts with approaches to null subjects which relate the possibility of long-distance subject extractions and the absence of superiority effects with postverbal subjects to the possibility of subject postposing.

23 The same reasoning can be extended to sentences such as (i), where a quantifier in object position z-commands a pronoun embedded in a postverbal (extraposed) sentential subject. (i) should be contrasted with (ii), where the sentential subject is preverbal and a binding relationship cannot be established.

(i) ?It bothered every man that he was sick
(ii) *that he was sick bothered every man

should be contrasted with (ii), where the sentential subject is preverbal and a binding relationship cannot be established.
Torrego assigns the sentence in (61) the structure (62a) whereas, say, Jaeggli (1982), assigns (61) the structure in (62b). 24

(61) Juan no sabe qué dijo quién

*J. neg know what said who* 

'Juan doesn't know what who said'

(62) a. Juan no sabe [CP qué] [IP dijo [IP quien] [VP tV tj]]

b. Juan no sabe [CP qué] [IP pro] [VP [VP dijo tj] quien]]

The proposal that a subject trace is properly-governed by a preposed verb was made by Torrego under a different theory of the ECP. While it is not clear how to translate her proposal into the terms of the ECP opted in this thesis, let us assume that that problem can be somehow resolved.

The account, however, fails to generalize to cases such as (63) which, as Torrego herself notes, independently require an analysis such as that of Jaeggli (1982). Long-extraction of the subject is possible in (63), even though V-P has not occurred. 25

(63) quién no sabes si tal vez haya hablado ya con ella?

'who don't you know whether has talked to her already?'

24 I am taking the liberty of restating Jaeggli and Torrego in terms of some recent proposals concerning phrase structure and the typology of empty categories. The substance of their claims remains unchanged, though.

25 COMP is filled by si which does not obligatorily trigger inversion, cf. (i) (Torrego's (16),)

(i) No sé si Juan llegara pro fin a tiempo o no.

'I don't know whether John will arrive on time or not.'
Consider, now, the data in (64). We see that, just as in Hebrew, wco effects are eliminated when the subject appears post-verbally. In (64c), subject postposing has occurred just as in the Hebrew examples in (51) above.26

(64) a. todo chico\textsubscript{i} dio un beso a su\textsubscript{i} madre alguna vez
   'every child\textsubscript{i} gave a kiss to his\textsubscript{i} mother some time'

   b. *?su\textsubscript{i} madre dio un beso a todo chico\textsubscript{i} alguna vez
      'his\textsubscript{i} mother gave a kiss to every child\textsubscript{i} some time'.

   c. ?que tipo de beso dio su\textsubscript{i} madre a todo chico\textsubscript{i} alguna vez
      'what kind of kiss gave his\textsubscript{i} mother to every child\textsubscript{i} some time?'

As the reader will have surely noticed, the subject in (64c) appears between the verb and the indirect object and not at the end of VP. Similar remarks hold for the Hebrew examples in (51). This suggests that the postposed subjects are adjoined to the left of VP. I will consider this issue more fully in 4.7 below.

The Distribution of the Definiteness Effect in Hebrew: Triggered vs. 'Free' Inversion

This section presents another argument in favor of a characterization of triggered inversion in terms of adjunction of the subject to VP. The argument is based on the distribution of the definiteness effect.

26 I am indebted to Itziar Laka, Ester Torrego and Juan Uriagereka for judgements and discussion of these facts.
As noted originally in Borer (1983), postverbal subjects in Hebrew obey the Definiteness Effect (DE). This is illustrated in (65) below with unaccusative and passive verbs.

(65) a. karati Se-hofiz’u Snei kitvei-’et xadaSim
   I read that-appeared two journals new
   ‘I read that two new journals appeared’

   *karati Se-hofiz’a ktav ha-’et ha-ze
   I read that-appeared the journal the this

b. noda 1-i Se-parca milxama nor’a’a
   became known to-me that-broke-out war terrible
   ‘I found out that a terrible war broke out’

   *noda 1-i Se-parca ha-milxama
   became known to-me that broke out the-war

c. Samati Se-niftax kiosk xadaS
   I heard that-opened new kiosk
   ‘I heard that a kiosk opened’

   *Samati Se-niftax ha-kiosk
   I heard that-opened the-kiosk

d. karati ba-’iton Se-karta te’una be-yom SliSi
   I read in-the-paper that-occurred accident on-day third
   ‘I read in the paper that an accident occurred on Tuesday’

   *karati ba-’iton karta ha-te’una be-yom SliSi
   I read in-the-paper that-occurred the-accident on Tuesday

Interestingly, the DE is suspended when a trigger for inversion appears clause initially.27

27 There are other factors which attenuate and even eliminate the DE. for example, the DE is completely suspended when a possessive dative is employed, as in many of the examples in the previous sections.
In 4.2 above we used the distribution of the DE to argue in favor of distinguishing two types of structures for inversion. We noted that VP-internal subjects obey the DE, whereas subjects adjoined to VP do not. The DE is suspended in (66) above precisely because the trigger creates the necessary environment for NP postposing and adjunction to VP. (65) above should be correlated with an S-structure such as (67a) below, with the subject inside VP. Triggered inversion, as in (66), correlates with (67b).
4.6 The Derived Word Order of Inversion

**Hebrew: Adjunction to VP on the Left**

Before proceeding to compare Hebrew and Italian with respect to the distribution of the DE, some words must be devoted to a discussion of word order in inverted contexts.

We have argued in favor of base-generating post-verbal subjects of verbs which are not unaccusative in a position adjoined to VP. Most, if not all works on subject inversion have assumed a structure such as (68) below, with the subject right-adjoined to VP by movement.
The choice of right adjunction over left-adjunction while, perhaps, natural in a theory which assumes a subject postposing rule, (cf. Baltin (1978),) is entirely unmotivated in a theory espousing move α. This is so since the alternative, namely, adjunction to the left of VP, would satisfy all the conditions on movement which right adjunction would. More generally, metatheoretical considerations favor the view that adjunction should not be restricted at all, particularly not in its directionality. Furthermore, there are putatively base-generated adjunction structures where the adjoined element is, presumably, left-adjoined to its category. I have in mind small clauses, etc...

In what follows, I present empirical evidence that postverbal subjects may, in the general case, be base-adjoined either on the left or on the right of VP. I will show that Hebrew utilizes both left-adjunction and right-adjunction to VP. Italian, however, lacks the left-adjoined option. I will further show that the difference between Hebrew and Italian cannot be reduced to a general typological difference between, say, Semitic languages and Romance or Indo-European ones, because Spanish behaves like Hebrew in allowing both left and right base-adjunction to VP.

Consider, first, VS order with an unergative presentational like 'telephone'. Verb amalgamation with I creates a configuration where it is impossible to
tell whether the subject of 'telephone' is left-adjointed, as in the S-S (69b) below or right adjoined to VP as in (69a).

\[ (69) \]
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a.} \\
\text{b.}
\end{array}
\]

In order to establish the place of the VP-adjoined subject, we must construct examples with verbs which have subcategorized complements. In such cases we have seen that VS order requires a trigger. Consider (70)-(73).

\[ (70) \]
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a.} \\
\text{b.}
\end{array}
\]

\[ (71) \]
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a.} \\
\text{b.}
\end{array}
\]
(72) a. karati Se-be-meSex kol xay-av, lo azav Kant et Koenigsburg
   I read that-in-duration all life-his, neg left Kant acc Koenigsburg
   'I read that all his life, K. never left Koenigsburg'

   b. *karati Se-be-meSex kol xay-av, lo azav et Koenigsburg Kant
      I read that-in-duration all life-his, neg left acc Koenigsburg Kant

(73) a. sipru l-i Se-'ad Se-hu lo higi’a le-N.Y, lo axal Dan
   told to-me that-until that-he neg arrived to N.Y., neg ate D.

   suSi kol kax tari
   sushi so fresh

   'I was told that it wasn't until he arrived in N.Y., that, D. ate
   such fresh sushi'

   b. *sipru l-i Se-'ad Se-hu lo higi’a le-N.Y, lo axal suSi
      until that-he neg arrived to N.Y., neg ate sushi

   kol kax tari Dan
   so fresh D.

The examples in (70)-(73) demonstrate that postverbal subjects in Hebrew
appear between the verb and its complements. In Italian, as we shall see
promptly, such VSO order is typically associated with a unique intonational
pattern, with a comma pause between the postverbal subject and the
complement. In Hebrew, however, such an intonation pattern is not attested.
These facts suggest, then, that the unmarked position of a postverbal subject
in Hebrew is between the verb and its complements.

Verb Raising or INFL Lowering?

Consider, now, the relevance of these facts for the question of how V
amalgamates with I. If V+I amalgamation involved a rule which lowered
AGR to V, along the lines of 'Rule R', (Chomsky (1981),) there would be no obvious way to derive the word order of VSO. In order for the subject to appear between the verb and its complements, it would have to be lowered into a position inside VP. This would raise numerous problems, ranging from violations of the projection principle to issues of Case assignment and, on such grounds alone, is clearly undesirable.

If, on the other hand, V raises to I, then the correct word-order is obtained by allowing the subject to appear left-adjoined to VP, as in (69b) above, and a host of problems are avoided. Both options are diagrammed in (74).

\[
\text{(74) VS WORD ORDER WITH INFL LOWERING}
\]

\[
\text{VS WORD ORDER WITH VERB RAISING}
\]

In a language like Italian or French, were postverbal subjects are adjoined to VP on the right, there is no way of telling whether, indeed, V moves to I or I
to V. The evidence favoring Verb raising to I is provided in a grammar in which postverbal subjects are typically adjoined to VP on the left.

**Heavy NP-Shift in Hebrew: Right Adjunction to VP**

Nonetheless, left-adjunction is not the only option in Hebrew. When it is phonologically 'heavy', the subject may, indeed, appear on the right. The judgments in (75)-(78) reflect preference rather than grammaticality. Various factors enter into the determination of such preference. Note, for example, that when both the subject and the object are 'heavy', as in (78), the right-adjointed subject is less acceptable. The right-adjointed position is restricted in Hebrew to heavy NP's, where heaviness is construed relative to the 'weight' of other NP's in the clause. It seems reasonable to assimilate these sentences to the phenomenon of 'Heavy NP-Shift' which, I will assume, instantiates a case right-adjunction to VP. 28

(75) a. *?lo yadanu 'im omnam tesapek ha-toxnit le- hakamat*

   *we knew if in-fact will satisfy the-plan for-the-construction*

   *megurei-keva et ha-hanhala*

   *dwellings-permanent acc the management*

   'we didnt know if, in fact, the plan to construct permanent dwellings will satisfy the managment'  

---

28 As noted above, in Ch.2, ft. , indefinite NP's can quite freely undergo HNPS. Thus, (75)-(78) are quite good even when the clause final NP is phonologically 'light' though indefinite.
b. lo yadanu 'im omnam tesapek et ha-hanhala
   neg we knew if in-fact will satisfy acc the management

   ha-toxnit le-hakamat megurei-keva
   the-plan for-the-construction dwellings permanent

(76) a. ?elu ha-kartisim Se-otam natan dod-i ha-Samen mi
   these the-tickets that-them gave uncle mine the-fat from

   -herzeliya le-iSt-o
   -Herzeliya to wife-his

   'these are the tickets that my fat uncle from Herzeliya gave to
   his wife'

b. elu ha-kartisim Se-otam natan le-iSt-o dod-i
   these the-tickets that-them gave to-wife-his uncle-mine

   ha-Samen mi-herzeliya
   the-fat from-Herzeliya

(77) a. ?be-meSex kol xay-av, lo azav ha-filosof ha-germani
   in-duration all life-his, neg left the-philosopher the German

   ha-dagul Kant et Koenigsburg
   the-great Kant acc Koenigsburg

   'all his life, the great German philosopher K. never left
   Koenigsburg'

b. be-meSex kol xay-av, lo azav et Koenigsburg ha-filosof
   in-duration all life-his, neg left acc Koenigsburg the philosopher

   ha-germani ha-dagul Kant
   the-German the-great Kant
(78) a. 'ad Se-hem lo higi-u le-N.Y, lo axl-u krov-av
until that-neg arrived-3pl to N.Y, neg ate-pl. relatives-his

ha-polanim Sel Dan suSi kol kax tari

the-Polish of D. sushi so fresh

'it wasn’t until they arrived in N.Y., that Dan’s Polish relatives
ate such fresh sushi'

b. ?'ad Se-hem lo higiu le-N.Y, lo axlu suSi kol kax tari
until that-neg arrived-3pl to N.Y, neg ate-pl. sushi so fresh

krov-av ha-polanim Sel Dan
relatives-his the-Polish of D.

The picture which emerges from these observations is that UG makes
available VP-adjoined positions. These may be on the right or on the left of
VP. I have tried to show that these positions are available in principle,
subject to various pragmatic, semantic and phonological considerations.

Let us turn, now, to Italian.

**Word Order and Inversion in Italian**

VS order in Italian, as in Hebrew is rather marginal with transitive verbs in
the unmarked case. There are, however, contexts in which VS order is
acceptable and, contexts where it is obligatory. One such context where
inversion is obligatory is in a clause embedded beneath a wh-interrogative. Consider (79), (80).

(79) a. Quando ha mangiato la pasta Mario?
   *when has eaten the pasta M.?*

   b. Quando ha mangiato Mario, la pasta?

   c. *Quando ha mangiato Mario la pasta?

(80) a. A chi ha detto la verità Mario?
   *to who has told the truth, M.?*

   b. A chi ha detto Mario, la verità?

   c. *A chi ha detto Mario la verità?

Considering, first, the sentences in (79a) and (80a), note that their Hebrew equivalents would be unacceptable. Conversely, (79c), (80c), are unacceptable in Italian, but fine in Hebrew. The difference between the two lanaguages is that VSO word order is unacceptable in Italian but constitutes the unmarked case of inversion in the latter. VOS order, on the other hand, is acceptable in Italian whereas it is restricted to heavy NP’s in Hebrew.

Antinucci and Cinque (A&C: (1977)) note that VSO order is available when a pause occurs between the subject and the verbal complements. This is illustrated in the (b) examples of (79) and (80). The pause is followed by a

29 I ignore here and throughout inversion with transitive verbs to which the direct object is cliticized, as in e.g., (i), (ii).

(i) Quando l’ha mangiata Mario?

(ii) A chi l’ha detta Mario?
fall in intonation suggesting that the elements following the subject constitute an afterthought of some sort. A&C argue that the verbal complements are right dislocated across the subject, 'marginalized' in their terms. This is illustrated in (81).

This process of 'marginalization' is closely tied up with focalization in Italian and serves to 'license' VS order. The marginalized elements are eliminated as potential carriers of focus, which can be assigned to the postverbal subject. In this respect marginalization represents, alongside Topicalization in Hebrew, another syntactico-pragmatic device for setting-up a context in which a postverbal subject may be construed as new information. In general, postverbal subjects in Italian must be adjacent to the verb. Marginalizing the complements by right-dislocating them, achieves that end, as does cliticization of the object, mentioned in ft. above.

The workings of this process of marginalization can also be observed with double-object verbs, as in (82). (82a) constitutes the unmarked SVO order. Under inversion the subject must follow the verb. It is followed by a pause and then the complements appear in any order.

Note that I am ignoring a grammatical reading of (92c), (93c), namely, one where the subject, Mario, is marginalized, but then the meaning is different - the object la pasta, is focalized.
(82) a. Giorgio ha dato un libro a Piero
    \textit{Giorgio, has given the book to Piero}

b. *Ha dato un libro a Piero Giorgio

c. *Ha dato un libro Giorgio a Piero

d. Ha dato Giorgio, un libro, a Piero

e. Ha dato Giorgio, a Piero, un libro

Now, to further test the claim that postverbal subjects in Italian are on the right of VP, we must find a context where marginalization does not have to apply. It is in these contexts that the unmarked order of constituents under inversion can be observed in a pristine form. One such context is in a clause embedded under a locution which requires the subjunctive mood. Consider (83), where VSO order in the embedded clause is unacceptable. Here, marginalization does not apply and VOS order in the only acceptable order of constituents.\footnote{I am indebted to A. Calabrese for these judgments and for very helpful discussions of this issue.}

(83) a. credo che abbia scritto questa lettera Mario
    \textit{I believe that has written this letter Mario}

b. ???credo che abbia scritto Mario questa lettera

It seems, then, that the unmarked order of constituents in Italian free subject inversion constructions is one where the subject appears after the complement, adjoined, I assume, to VP on the right. A complement may follow the subject when it is separated from it by an intonational break,
which we can take to be a form of right dislocation. The strategy of adjoining a subject to the left of VP is evidently, unavailable in the grammar of Italian.

4.7 On Certain Differences and Similarities Among Italian, Hebrew and Spanish

Subjects of Infinitives Embedded Beneath a Raising Verb

In Ch.3, we discussed the illformedness of sentences like (87a). We argued that in the absence of Case transmission from the null expletive, the NP tre ragazzi violates the Case Filter, because it is not in a position to get either nominative Case (being the subject of an infinitive) nor partitive Case (due to the clausal boundary separating it from the verb sembrare.) (84a) contrasts with the fully acceptable (84b), where the NP tre ragazzi is adjoined to VP, and receives nominative Case from INFL. The wellformed structure of (84b) is given in (84c).

(84) a. *sembrano tre ragazzi essere arrivati
   b. sembrano essere arrivati tre ragazzi
   c. [IP pro [I: sembrano [VP t v [IP t_i essere arrivati [NP tre ragazzi]_i ]]]]
   d. [IP pro [I: sembrano [VP [VP t v [IP t_i essere arrivati t_i ]] [NP gli ragazzi]_i ]]]

32 For some development of the theory of 'marginalization' in Italian see, in addition to Antinucci and Cinque's article, Calabrese (1985) and references cited therein.
33 This section has benefitted from discussions with A. Belletti.
Since **tre ragazzi** is indefinite it may appear in the complement position of **arrivati**. If, however, we replace **tre ragazzi** with a definite NP, e.g., **gli ragazzi** a representation such as (84c) is impossible, only (84d), where the postverbal NP is adjoined to VP rather than internal to it.

Borer (1986a:412) makes parallel observations w.r.t. Hebrew, citing the sentence I give in (85). Under the hypothesis that **begin** is a Raising verb in Hebrew, (98) can receive the same explanation as (84) and (85b) can be assigned a structure equivalent to (84c).

\[(85)\]
\[\begin{align*}
\text{a. } \text{hitxil-u gSamim la-redet} & \\
& \text{began-pl rains to-fall}
\end{align*}\]

\[\text{b. } \text{hitxil-u la-redet gSamim}\]

Now, when we replace the indefinite **gSamim** with the definite **ha-gSamim**, we may observe an interesting difference between Italian and Hebrew. Since adjunction to VP on the left is the means by which postverbal NP's escape the DE, in Hebrew, we predict a pattern such as that of (86). (86a) is unacceptable, since adjunction to the right of VP, as in (84d), is available only to 'heavy' NP's. By contrast (86b), which has the structure (86c) is fully acceptable in Hebrew but not in Italian.

\[(86)\]
\[\begin{align*}
\text{a. } \text{*hitxilu-u la-redet ha-gSamim} & \\
& \text{began-pl the-rains}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{b. } \text{bi-diyuk etmol hitxil-u ha-gSamim la-redet} & \\
& \text{precisely yesterday, began-pl the-rains to fall}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{c. } \text{trigger [IP pro_1 \_1: began [VP rains_t [VP t_v [IP t_i to fall t_j]]]]}
\end{align*}\]
The Definiteness Effect in Triggered Inversion

Since left adjunction to VP is not a viable option in Italian, it is predicted that a VP-internal subject (i.e., a subject of an unaccusative or passive verb) will not be able to 'escape' the DE by being adjoined to the left of VP, but only by being adjoined to its right. Thus, when an unaccusative or passive verb takes a VP internal (subcategorized) complement and the subject appears between the verb and the complement, the subject is sensitive to the DE, since it is in VP and not adjoined to it on the left. This is precisely the observation of Belletti (1987), who provides the data which appear in (87) and (88) below.

(87) a. Al'improviso è entrato un uomo dalla finestra
   suddenly entered a man from the window

   b. *Al'improviso è entrato l'uomo dalla finestra
      suddenly entered the man from the window

(88) a. E' stato messo un libro di Gianni sul tavolo
      has been put a book of Gianni on the table

   b. *E' stato messo il libro di Gianni sul tavolo
      has been put the book of Gianni on the table

The presence of the subcategorized PP in (87b), (88b), indicates that the subject is inside VP where it cannot receive nominative Case, but only partitive Case and therefore it manifests the DE. On pp. above, we saw, that the DE is suspended under triggered Inversion in Hebrew since a postverbal subject can adjoin to VP on the left and occupy an A' position to which Case need not be assigned. Thus, Hebrew and Italian contrast minimally. Compare (87), (88) above, with (89), (90) below.
More striking, perhaps, is the contrast between Italian and Spanish, to which we now turn.

**Word Order and Inversion in Spanish**

Spanish, like Hebrew and unlike Italian, permits both VSO and VOS orders in inversion configurations. Consider (91).

(91) a. (aqui) comió Juan las tortillas
       (here) ate Juan the tortillas

b. (aqui) comió las tortillas Juan

c. las comió

All speakers I have consulted agree that both (91a) and (92b) are possible variants. Moreover, there is no intonational pause between the subject and the object in (91a), indicating that Spanish does not utilize a device such as...
'marginalization', although cliticization of the object does take place, as in Italian, and speakers do find (91c) better than (91a) or (91b) where the presence of an overt complement must be offset by a trigger of some sort, but this option is irrelevant for our discussion.

Consider, now, inversion in a subjunctive clause, (92), and recall that the Italian equivalent of (92a) is unacceptable. Italian allows only (92b).

(92) a. espero que escriba Juan la carta
   *I hope that write-SUBJ Juan the letter*

   b. espero que escriba la carta Juan

Speakers of Spanish note a difference in meaning between (92a) and (92b). (92a) is construed as a response to a concern about Juan, about what he will do. (92b), on the other hand is a response to a concern about the writing of the letter which the speaker presupposes, is something which must be done. In (92a), Juan is presupposed and the letter is focalized and in (92b) it is the writing of the letter which is presupposed and Juan focalized. These observations suggest that in Spanish, unlike in Italian, a focalized element need not be adjacent to the verb. Rather, there seems to be evidence that the position of highest focus in Spanish, to the right of the verb, is clause final.

This is further supported by the facts in (93). Suppose, first, that a property of a wh element in situ is that it must always be the most highly focused element in the clause. The degraded status of (93b) can be made sense of under the assumption that the NP las chicas, being clause-final, is focalized to a higher degree than the wh-word, quienes.
Verb-preposing in Spanish has been argued to be triggered by a subclass of wh interrogatives, (Torrego (1984).) If left-adjunction to VP is indeed an option in Spanish, obligatory V-P across a VP to which a subject is left-adjoined would be indistinguishable from V-P across a preverbal subject, since the surface order of words would be the same. However, some interrogative words do not trigger V-P so that VSO order in these cases can come about only by adjoining a subject to the left of VP and not by V-P. An interrogative such as porque, for example, does not trigger V-P although it does create a context for free inversion with transitive verbs. In (94), we again see that both right adjunction and left adjunction are admissible options.

(94) a. porque manejaria Juan este coche?
   *why will drive Juan this car
   'why will J. drive this car?'

b. porque manejaria este coche Juan?

The possibility of adjoining subjects to the left of VP in Spanish, but not in Italian, accounts for the contrast between (87b), (88b) above and the corresponding Spanish sentences in (95b), (96b) below which pattern like the Hebrew sentences in (89b), (90b).
(95) a. De repente entró un hombre por la ventana
   *suddently entered a man through the window*
   'suddenly, a man entered through the window'

   b. De repente entró el hombre por la ventana
   *suddently entered the man through the window*

(96) a. estaba dejado un libro de Juan encima de la mesa
   *was put a book of Juan on the table*
   'a book of Juan's was on the table'

   b. estaba dejado el libro de Juan encima de la mesa

The suspension of the DE in these examples is due to the (string vacuous) adjunction of the postverbal subject to the left of VP. A plausible structure for (96b) is given in (97).

(97)

I think that this contrast between Spanish and Italian is particularly interesting since it strongly suggests that what is going on here has nothing to do with semantics. It is rather implausible that the verb entrare in Italian means something different from Spanish entrar, yet the DE is manifested in one language but not in the other.

The possibility of assigning a structure such as (97) to (96b), rests crucially on the possibility of verb fronting into I in the syntax, even when I is
filled by an auxiliary such as *estaba*. That this is, in fact, a possibility, can be shown on the basis of (98), an example of a yes-no question with a verbal auxiliary in I.\textsuperscript{34} Note that verb-preposing in this case can involve the auxiliary alone or the auxiliary and the verb.

\begin{enumerate}
\item[(98)] a. está María terminando el libro?
   'Is Mary finishing the book?'

\item b. está terminando María el libro?
\end{enumerate}

Let us assume, with Chomsky (1986), that raising into the head of COMP is restricted to heads in the X' sense (See Travis (1984), Baker (1985).) In (98a), an element in I has raised into COMP and in (98b), V moves first into I and then together with I, into COMP. Let us further assume that in this latter step, V has incorporated with I, in the sense of Baker (1985), and it is the incorporated head which is raised into C.

In Spanish, movement into COMP is possible also with V+ modal, V+aspectual and V+restructuring verb combinations, as shown in (99)-(100), which we may also take to be cases of incorporation.

\begin{enumerate}
\item[(98)] a. Con quién podrá Juan ir a N.Y.?
   'With who will John be able to go to NY?'

\item b. Con quién podrá ir Juan a NY?
\end{enumerate}

\textsuperscript{34} The examples in this section are taken from Torrego (1984) where they are analyzed in somewhat different terms.
(99) a. A quién acaba Juan de hablar?
   'whom did J. just finish talking to?'
   
   b. A quién acaba de hablar Juan?

(100) a. Qué viene María a hacer aquí?
   'what has M. come to do here?'
   
   b. Qué viene a hacer María aquí?

As Torrego (1984) notes, the auxiliaries ser and haber are an exception to this generalization. If a verbal sequence involves ser and haber, both the finite form of the auxiliary and the main verb must obligatorily raise. Let us assume that these auxiliaries obligatorily trigger incorporation.\(^{35}\)

(101) a. Qué ha organizado la gente?
   'what have people organized?'
   
   b. *Qué ha la gente organizado?

(102) a. Por quién fue organizada la reunión?
   'by whom was the meeting organized?'
   
   b. *Por quién fue la reunión organizada?

It seems, then, that we can maintain the view that verbs may raise to INFL in the syntax of Romance, making available a representation such as (97) above.

\(^{35}\) This may be due, at least in the case of auxiliaries formed with haber, to their affix-like nature which bars them from appearing as bare morphemes. This is less plausible for fue, which can appear also as a main verb, while the form of haber which may appear as a main verb, hay, is morphologically distinct from the auxiliary form.
4.8 A Final Speculation: VSO Languages

I have argued that the combination of verb raising to INFL and subject adjunction to the left of VP yield VSO word order in Hebrew and Spanish. It is tempting, though far beyond the scope of this work, to extend this derivation to VSO languages in general. The claim, if pursued, would be that VSO languages have the structure of $[\text{pro}_1-V-S-O]$ with the subject adjoined to VP on the left and the verb raised into INFL.

Such a structure seems, at least superficially, to account straightforwardly for some of the well-known properties of VSO languages. For example, Chung (1983) has shown that in Chamorro, a surface VSO language, the subject is properly governed. This, she argues, follows from the fact that Chamorro manifests no 'complementizer/trace' effects and allows extraction from sentential subjects, unlike, say, English. Similar arguments have been made for Irish (McCloskey (1979), (1982).) This is precisely what characterizes the VP-adjoined subject position in the Romance Null Subject languages. Moreover, Chamorro and, in fact, all VSO languages are pro-drop languages. Treating VSO-hood as an instantiation of subject adjunction to VP provides a cohesive account of the ECP properties of the subject position in VSO languages as well as of the their pro-drop character.36 It also provides a natural explanation for Greenberg's Universal no. 6: "All languages with dominant VSO order have SVO as an alternative or as the only alternative base order." If subject adjunction to VP does not take place, the subject appears in its canonical position in [SPEC/IP]. The pro-V-S-O

36 Chung (1983, ft.8) considers and then rejects this possibility.
account, thus, maintains the claim of Emonds (1979) and others that VSO word order is 'derived' in some sense from an underlying SVO order. It differs from the proposals of e.g., Emonds, (1979), Sproat, (1985) in assimilating VSO-hood to Romance free inversion and not to (Germanic) verb raising.

One question which such an account immediately poses is why VSO word order is restricted in, say, Spanish and Hebrew, and requires some sort of 'trigger' of a pragmatic nature whereas no such trigger is needed in 'hard core' VSO languages. I leave this matter for future research.
Chapter 5
THE pro MODULE

5.1 Chapter Abstract

In this chapter, I explore some properties of the pro module of UG, mainly on the basis of data from Modern Hebrew. I propose various modifications in the principles governing the distribution of pro, and, in particular, the null expletive pro of inversion constructions.

The main fact discussed in this chapter is that postverbal subjects do not admit of 'long' wh-movement in Hebrew. I discuss the relevant data in 5.4. My account for this datum rests on an the claim that the postverbal subject is required to identify the features of the null subject. A similar range of facts from French is discussed in 5.5.

Section 5.6 relates the theory of pro advanced to the hypothesis that expletives are replaced by arguments in LF, (Ch.2). The analysis of the Hebrew and French extraction facts forms the basis for an argument in favor of a 'strong' version of the 'Extended' Projection Principle, 5.7.

In later subsections, I propose an enrichment of the theory or pro by incorporating the feature [+/- person] into the set of features which AGR can be set for. The distinction person/nonperson is then shown to play a significant role in the distribution of pro-drop in Hebrew.

5.2 Null Subjects of Inversion
Let us begin with the null subject of the type of inversion constructions discussed in Ch. 4. Recall that Hebrew manifests two types of inversion configurations, which I have descriptively labelled 'Free Inversion' and 'triggered inversion'. Some examples are given in (1) and (2) below, with the associated structures (3a) and (3b).

(1) **Free Inversion**

a. **UNACCUSATIVE:**

\[ \text{ne'elm-u sfarim me-ha-sifriya} \]
\[ \text{disappeared-pl. books from-the-library} \]
\[ \text{books have disappeared from the library} \]

b. **PASSIVE:**

\[ \text{Sulma agra be-sax Sekel} \]
\[ \text{was paid fee for-sum eighty Sekels} \]
\[ \text{an 80-Sekel fee was paid} \]

c. **UNERGATIVE:**

\[ \text{tilfen avi-xa} \]
\[ \text{telephoned father-your} \]
\[ \text{your father telephoned} \]

(2) **Triggered Inversion**

a. **kol yom kona ha-yalda smalot**
\[ \text{every day buys the-girl dresses} \]
\[ \text{every day the girl buys dresses} \]
b. et ha-matana ha-zu yiten Dan le-im-o
   acc the-gift the-this will-give Dan to-mother-his
   'this gift, Dan will give to his mother'

c. et ma natan Dan le-im-o?
   acc what gave Dan to-mother-his
   'what did Dan give his mother?'

As shown by (1) and (2), inversion is possible with third person agreement in both the present, past and future tenses. Thus, in (1a), we have inversion with a third person plural, in (1b) and (1c), third person singular agreement. In (2a) the verb is in the participial, present tense and in (2b) and (2c) the tense specification is future and past, respectively. This state of affairs contrasts with argumental pro-drop in Hebrew which, as Borer (1983) has shown, is restricted to the first and second person in the future and past tenses. Whatever conditions must be met in order for an argumental pro to
be licensed, and I will address those in the latter part of the chapter, it appears that those conditions are relaxed for a null expletive, since it may appear in a wider range of environments. This, precisely, is the observation of Rizzi (1986) who suggests that an expletive pro need only be formally licensed whereas an argumental pro must be assigned grammatical features (ϕ-features) by association with the licensing head. Rizzi separates the notion of formal licensing from content assignment, or recoverability, (4).  

(4) pro MODULE (Rizzi (1986))

a. Formal Licensing:
   -pro is Case-marked by X₀

b. Feature Assignment/Recoverability:
   -Let X be the licensing head of an occurrence of pro: Then pro has the grammatical specification of the features on X coindexed with it.

Note, first, that we can dispense with the condition that pro must be Case marked by the licensing head. This is so because the requirement that pro receive Case is independently required by the Case conditions, as discussed in Ch.3, since the position occupied by pro heads an A-chain in LF. Furthermore, if Case may only be assigned under government, again, as a general condition, then (4a) is altogether redundant. To distinguish English, which doesn’t have pro, from Italian, suppose that formal licensing consists

---

1 I follow Rizzi in remaining neutral on the question whether features are assigned to an otherwise featureless pro, or recovered from a pro which is generated with features.

See, also, Adams (1987), where formal licensing is construed in terms of government in a canonical direction.
of some abstract feature, call it Feature F, the presence of which is subject to parametric variation.

In the terms of (4), Hebrew can be described as a language where pro is formally licensed, hence null expletives are attested but where feature assignment is restricted to first and second person past and future inflections.

The main arguments of this chapter are constructed on the basis of the extraction properties of postverbal subjects. Before, proceeding, however, some general remarks about extraction and wh-movement in Hebrew are in order.

5.3 Properties of 'Long' Wh-Movement in Hebrew

As noted, originally, in Reinhart (1982), wh-island violations are almost imperceptible in Hebrew. This is illustrated in (5) with direct and indirect objects.

(5) a. et ma lo yadat le-mi Dani natan
   acc what neg 2fs-know to-who D. gave
   'what didn't you know to whom D. gave'

   b. le-mi lo yadat et ma D. Salax
   to whom didn't 2fs-know what D. sent'
   'to whom didn't you know what D. sent'

---

2 The unbounded nature of wh-movement in Hebrew is restricted to extraction across a wh-island. Complex NP's, adjuncts and subjects all constitute islands in Hebrew.
The subjacency effect discernible in the English sentences corresponding to (5) is not manifested in Hebrew. There is some awkwardness in (5), due, I believe, to the complexity of processing multiple interrogations from the same clause. Far better sentences can be constructed with Topicalization or with relative clauses. Thus (6) below is even better than the corresponding interrogative.

(6) hine ha-sefer Se-eineni zoxer le-mi Salaxti (oto)  
    here the book that-J dont recall to-whom I sent (it)

The resumptive pronoun is obligatory in the English gloss, an indication that movement from the object of sent all the way up to the matrix COMP violates subjacency. The pronoun is optional in Hebrew, indicating, by the same logic, that extraction is licit.

Reinhart (1982) also showed that the cross-linguistic variation described in Rizzi (1982) cannot be captured by parameterizing the set of bounding nodes since wh-movement across a wh-island in Hebrew is, truly, unbounded whereas in Italian, for example, it is merely less bounded than in English. In the following example, an acceptable Hebrew sentence is juxtaposed with an unacceptable Italian one. The relevant configuration is given in (7c).

(7) a. et ha-ba’aya ha-zo lo hayiti roce  la-da’at  
    acc the-problem, the-this neg I would have wanted to know

    et mi hayinu creixim li-S’ol mi patar  
    acc who we should have had to ask who solved

    'this problem, I wouldn’t want to know who we should have had  
    to ask who solved’
b. *questo incarico, che non so proprio chi possa aver indovinato a qui affidare, mi sta creando un sacco di grattacapi

'this task, that I really don't know who might have guessed to whom I will entrust, is getting me into trouble'

c. \([WH_1...[WH_2...t_2...[WH_3...t_3...t_1]]]\)

Rizzi (1982) notes that when the resumptive strategy is employed in (7b), the sentence is substantially improved. There is no measurable difference in acceptability between the sentence in (7a) with or without a resumptive pronoun in place of a gap.

Yet another difference between Hebrew and English/Italian is that in the former there is no principled limit to the number of extractions per clauses. Thus, Doron (1982) cites the following sentence with five gaps.

(8) \(\text{mi-mi}_1 \text{Dani amar Se-et ha-smartutim ha-ele}_2 \text{ hu lo mevin from-whom Dani said that-acc the-}^{\text{junk}} \text{the-these he neg understand}\)

\(\text{eix}_3 \text{ be-mea dolar}_4 \text{ et Rina}_5 \text{ hiciax-ta t}_3 \text{ le-Same'a t}_5 \text{ how for one hundred Dollars acc Rina you succeeded to-convince}\)

\(\text{li-knot t}_2 \text{ t}_4 \text{ t}_1 \text{ to buy}\)

'who did D. say that this junk, he doesn't understand how, for $100, Rina, you succeeded to convince to buy from'
resolve. I merely bring it up as background information for the analysis of subject extraction which follows in section 5.4 below.

The second remark that needs to be made is that there are no that/t effects in Hebrew with a [-wh] complementizer. This fact, originally noted in Doron (1983), is analyzed in Shlonsky (forthcoming) as deriving from the syntactic movement of the complementizer and its adjunction to a maximal projection to its right before S-structure. Thus, sentence (9a) below is represented at D-structure as (9b) and at S-structure as (9c).

(9) a. mi xaSavt Se ohev Su‘it
   who you thought thatlikesbeans
   'who did you think likes beans'

b. [IP xaSavt [CP [C Se [IP [NP mi_i ohev Su‘it]]]]]

c. mi_i [IP xaSavt [CP t_i [IP [NP t_i] Se-ohev Su‘it]]]

Whereas Se appears in the head of CP at D-structure, it is adjoined to the verb at S-S. Since Se-adjunction empties CP of its head, there is no longer any minimality barrier intervening between t* and t in (9c). Hence, the variable t is properly-governed by t*, which explains the acceptability of (9a).

The complementizer Se- contrasts with the complementizer 'im ('if') in that the latter remains in its D-structure position in C and the trace of the subject

3 Actually, Se adjoins a higher projection of V+I and not the verb itself. For discussion of the details, see Shlonsky (forthcoming).
embedded beneath it fails to meet the ECP. Consequently, (10) is ungrammatical.

(10) *mi lo yadati 'im ohev Su’it
who NEG I knew if likes beans
'who didn’t I know whether likes beans'

Given these properties of the Hebrew complementizer system, a long-extracted subject over Se- will always have the option of leaving a trace in the position of [SPEC/IP], since a variable in that position will not violate the ECP. Since we are interested in investigating the properties of extraction from the VP-adjoined position, we must neutralize this option. In order to control for that in the examples that follow, I shall embed the variable under a complementizer such as *im or in a wh-island. Since wh-islands in Hebrew do not block extraction, we expect subjacency effects with long-extracted subjects to be also neutralized.

5.4 Extraction of Postverbal Subjects: Hebrew

Consider, now, the array of facts illustrated in (11)-(13). While direct objects may be long extracted in Hebrew, as shown by the acceptability of (11-13a), a subject of an unaccusative or passive verb may not be extracted over a wh-island. (11-13b).

(11) a. (et) ma lo yada-ta 'im Dani hepil?
(acc) what neg knew+2ms whether Dani dropped+3ms
'what didn’t you know whether Dani dropped?’

b. *?ma lo yadat'a 'im nafal 'al ha-ricpa?
what neg knew+2ms if fell+3ms on the floor
'what didn’t you know whether fell on the floor?’
If the trace of the extracted subject was in the [SPEC/IP] position, the unacceptability of (11, 12, 13b) could be straightforwardly explained as an ECP violation, since the trace of the extracted subject would not be properly governed. However, we have seen that subjects of unaccusative and passive verbs may appear in their D-structure θ-position which is the structural direct object position. The question is why a trace of an unaccusative subject is illicit in exactly the same structural position where a trace of an object is fine. What rules out a representation such as (14b) while allowing (14a)?

(14) a. wh_i.....[CP wh [IP Dani [VP dropped t]]]
b. *wh.....[CP wh [IP pro [VP fell t]]]

Under the assumption that extraction of the subject may proceed from the postverbal 8-position, an appeal to the ECP cannot be made. This is so since the traces in both (14a) and (14b) are properly governed.

Furthermore, the sentences in (15) show that LF-extraction of an inverted unaccusative subject may proceed freely and the subject/object asymmetry characteristic of S-structure extraction is eliminated in LF, (as noted first in Borer (1983)). Thus, the subject wh-in-situ in (15a) shows no superiority effects when it is postverbal. In preverbal position it is ruled-out, as shown in (15b), presumably by the ECP. Similarly, a VP-adjoined quantifier in (16a) can be associated with a scope marker in a higher clause whereas it cannot when appearing in the preverbal subject position. The examples in (17) show that direct objects pattern like the inverted subjects, as is to be expected.

(15) a. ma kana mi?  
    what bought who

b. *ma mi . kana?  
    what who  bought
(16) a. ein-eni xoSev-et Se-nitan kol hesber le-
    neg-lsg think-2sf that-was given any explanation for-
    hitnahagut-o
    behavior -his
'I dont think that any explanation was given for his behavior'

b. *ein-eni xoSev-et Se-kol hesber nitan le-
    neg-lsg think-2sf that-any explanation was given for-
    hitnahagut-o
    behavior -his

(17) a. mi kana ma
    who bought what

b. ein-eni xoSev-et Se-hu natan kol hesber le-
    neg-lsg think-2sf that-he gave any explanation for-
    hitnahagut-o
    behavior -his
'I dont think that he gave any explanation for his behavior'

Before proceeding, let us note that the same range of facts can be reproduced
with VP-adjoined subjects which appear, for example, under triggered
inversion. In the (a) examples of (18) an object is wh-moved and in (19) it
is relativized. Subject extraction is blocked in both cases, as in (18,19b).

(18) a. (et) ma lo yadata le-mi natan Dani
    (acc) what neg you know to-who gave D.
    'what didn't you know to whom Dan gave'

b. *mi lo yada’at be-eize Sa’a metapes al ha-har
    who neg you knew at-what time climbs up the mountain
    'who didn’t you know at what time climbs up the mountain'
The same reasoning which ruled out an ECP account for the extraction facts with the VP-internal subjects can be carried over to these cases. The availability of LF extraction, as shown by the contrast in (20), patterns together with the contrast in (15), (16) above.

(20)  

a.  
mi lo yada ex oxel mi et ha-gvina?  
who neg knew how who eats the cheese  
'who didn't know how who eats the cheese?'

b.  
*mi lo yada ex mi oxel et ha-gvina?  
who neg knew how who eats acc the cheese

More generally, the parallelism between VP-internal and VP-adjoined subjects strongly suggests that it is not the trace of wh-movement which is offensive. How, then, are we to account for the fact that Hebrew mimics the Italian paradigm in LF, permitting long-distance wh-movement of a subject, while patternning like English at S-structure, blocking a parallel type of movement?

5.4 The Extractability of Postverbal Subjects and the Theory of pro
My approach will be to relate the possibility of postverbal subject extraction to the licensing principles for null subjects. I will show that expletives in inversion constructions are subject to a requirement more restrictive than formal licensing. Indeed, I will claim that the pro module treats on par expletives associated with postverbal subjects and null arguments. This consequence follows, I suggest, from Chomsky's Expletive Replacement Hypothesis, which has the result that the preverbal subject position of both argumental pro drop and subject inversion constructions is the position in which the external 8-role is realized in LF.

Some direct evidence that the principle violated in (11)-(13) and again, in (8)-(9) above, concerns the preverbal pro and not the postverbal trace itself, is given in (21). In (21b,c), with the verbal inflection for first and second person, extraction of a subject over a wh-island is considered fine. To recall, it is precisely in the environment of first and second person agreement that argument pro-drop is possible in Hebrew, as shown in (22b,c). The ungrammaticality of (21a), should be correlated with (22a), where argument pro-drop is unacceptable.

(21)  a. *Xaym, af exad lo Sa'al lama 'azav et X, no one neg asked-3ms why left-3ms acc

    ha-mesiba mukdam

    the-party early

    'Haym, nobody asked why (he) left the party early'
b. ani ve-at, af exad lo Sa’al lama ‘azav-nu et ha-
I and -you, no one neg asked -3ms why left-1pl acc the-
mesiba mukdam
party early
‘me and you, nobody asked why (we) left the party early’

c. ata ve-Kaym, af exad lo Sa’al lama ‘azav-tem et ha-
you and Kaym, no one neg asked -3ms why left-2pl acc the-
mesiba mukdam
party early
‘you and Haym, nobody asked why (you) left the party early’

(22) a. *azav
pro
left+3ms
‘he left’
b. azav-nu
pro
left+1pl.
‘we left’
c. azav-tem
pro
left+1pl.
‘you (pl.) left’

Thus, this paradigm shows that the possibility of extracting a subject correlates with the capacity of AGR to license argumental pro drop. Now, the mere fact that subject inversion, i.e., without extraction, is acceptable in Hebrew means that pro must be formally licensed in Hebrew just like it is in, say, Italian and unlike, say, English. Put differently, the account of these Hebrew facts must concede that the availability of expletive pro depends on more than formal licensing. The generalization that, I think, must be drawn from the Hebrew facts is that pro must be associated with phonologically overt grammatical features at S-structure. Under inversion, the postverbal
NP itself supplies these features, by being coindexed with pro, which it must be, since it replaces it in LF. Extraction of a postverbal subject strands pro, so to speak, since the features borne by the trace are phonologically null.

As a first approximation, then, I propose to substitute (23) for the feature assignment procedure, given above in (4b).

(23) Feature Assignment/Recoverability
-Coindex pro with phonologically overt grammatical features.

We now interpret richness of agreement as an S-structure property of the phonological explicitness of the representation of grammatical features. In Italian, for example, AGR is rich in virtue of overtly representing \(\emptyset\)-features. The features of pro are thus fully recoverable from AGR alone. A postverbal subject may thus be freely extractable; and it is. In Hebrew, overt features of person are represented in the first and second person conjugations in the past and future. Consequently, only with such agreement can postverbal subjects be extracted. The third person marker, though, is discretely represented, by, say, the absence of features in the past tense. This suggests that the notion of phonological overtness is insufficient to characterize Hebrew pro drop. I will address this issue shortly and will argue that the third person marking in Hebrew marks the feature impersonal and does not designate a person. This predicts that only impersonal subjects may be dropped with third person agreement; the prediction turns out to be valid, as we shall see. However, since our purpose is to demonstrate that null

---

4 As stated, (23) does not rule out a recovery of features from a fronted wh-word. What needs to be said, intuitively, is that pro's features must be recovered from the element that actually replaces it in LF. See ahead, pp.221-227 for discussion.
expletives and null arguments are treated the same way by the pro module, let us proceed, for the present, under the assumption that Hebrew AGR is impoverished in the third person. Since the feature assignment procedure for pro takes place at S-structure, it is predicted that postverbal subjects may be freely extracted in LF, since, at LF, and only in LF are the overt features no longer needed for assignment to pro, since it is eliminated by expletive replacement.

5.5 Extraction of Postverbal Subjects: French

Confirmation for the approach advocated here comes from French. Consider (24)-(26), data discussed in Pollock (1986).

(24) a. Il faudrait que viennent plus de linguistes à nos réunions
   b. *Combien de linguistes faudrait-il que viennent à nos réunions?

(25) a. J'aurais aimé que soient condamnés plus de coupables
   b. *Combien de coupables aurais-tu aimé que soient condamnés?

(26) a. Pierre a nié qu’aient été relaxés des criminels
   b. *Combien de criminels Pierre a-t-il nié qu’aient été relaxés?

The (a) examples in this paradigm illustrate inversion of the subject in a subjunctive clause, which is an environment in which this sort of inversion is possible. Following Pollock, let us assume that the preverbal position is occupied by an expletive pro. Thus, (24a) should be represented roughly as (27).
Like Hebrew, the postverbal subject cannot be extracted, as shown by the unacceptability of the (b) examples in (24)-(26). Let us hypothesize, as seems plausible, that pro in French is formally licensed, as it is in Italian. French differs from Italian, however, in that agreement is less phonologically explicit. Thus, French patterns like Hebrew in requiring that pro’s features be recovered or assigned by the postverbal NP itself. The parallelism with Hebrew, if true, engenders the prediction that the postverbal subject be extractable in LF, a prediction borne out by the wh-in situ examples in (28).

(28) a. Qui aurait aimé que soient condamnés combien de coupables?
   b. Qui a niait qu’aient été relaxés combien de criminels?

Now, unlike Hebrew, French has an overt expletive, il. When pro in the sentences in (24)-(26) is replaced with il, a postverbal subject is freely extractable. This is illustrated in (29)-(31).

(29) a. il faudrait qu’il vienne plus de linguistes à nos réunions
   b. Combien de linguistes faudrait-il qu’il vienne à nos réunions?

(30) a. J’aurais aimé qu’il soit condamné plus de coupables
   b. Combien de coupables aurais-tu aimé qu’il soit condamné?

(31) a. Pierre a nié qu’il ait été relaxé des criminels
   b. Combien de criminels Pierre a-t-il nié qu’il ait été relaxé?
Under the theory proposed here, the extractability of the postverbal subject under ii receives a natural explanation. Since the sentences involve an overt expletive, which is endowed with overt grammatical features, and not a null expletive, the conditions of the pro module are trivially satisfied and a postverbal subject may be freely moved.5

Let me mention another, more tentative consequence.6 Under the account I am developing, an expletive pro in languages with impoverished agreement features must be supported by overt features assigned by the postverbal subject itself. If the postverbal subject is extracted, pro is stranded because its features cannot be recovered by the overt environment. Now, certain languages permit extraction from inside a subject. Specifically, both French and Italian allow the head of a QP to be extracted, leaving behind its specifier. I conjecture that in a language like French extraction of a quantifier ought to have an intermediate status: Sentences in which a bare quantifier is extracted ought to be marginally better than sentences where the entire subject has been moved. Although judgments are subtle, there are speakers who accept the contrast exemplified in (32).

5 Note that French does not allow construal of an embedded quantifier such as ‘personne’ with a matrix scope marker even when the quantifier is a postverbal subject, (i). Thus, (i) is judged comparable to (ii), where personne appears in the [SPEC/IP] position. The fact that no improvement occurs when pro is replaced by il, as in (iii) suggests that there are independent reasons barring long distance scope construal of a subject quantifier. In this respect, French differs from Hebrew (cf. (10).)

(i) *il ne faudrait que vienne à nos réunions personne
(ii) *il ne faudrait que personne vienne à nos réunions
(iii) *il ne faudrait qu’il vienne à nos réunions personne

6 I am grateful to R. Kayne, (p.c.) for pointing out this consequence.
(32)  a. *j’aurais aimé qu’en soient publiés [NP e]

b. ??j’aurais aimé qu’en soient publiées [NP trois e]

Let us suppose that the features of pro can be partially recovered by coindexing with a postverbal subject which is partially overt, a characterization which, I think, is intuitively clear, although it remains an interesting question how to make it more precise.

5.6 pro Drop, the Expletive Replacement Hypothesis and Binding Condition C

If this general approach is on the right track, it suggests that we rethink the distinction between the null expletive of inversion and a null argument. Specifically, if both null expletives and null arguments are subject to the same licensing conditions, that is to say, if they are treated by the pro module as elements of the same type, as the Hebrew and French facts seem to suggest, then it is surely not the D-structure or S-structure characterization of the subject position as thematic or non-thematic that is relevant for the assignment of features.

But there is, in fact, a level of representation where the distinction between expletives and arguments is obliterated, the level of LF, since at LF expletives are replaced by arguments. It seems, then, that the pro-module must be sensitive to the LF properties of the subject position, that is, to whether it is filled by an argument or not. One is led to the conclusion that
the pro module identifies pro w.r.t. LF by assigning overt features to a null subject which is to be interpreted as argumental.\textsuperscript{7}

Let us summarize the main points made so far. I have shown that the conditions which a null subject of inversion must meet in order to be licensed are really the same as those that must be met by a null argument. I argued that a necessary condition for feature assignment to both occurrences of null subjects is that the features are copied off or recovered from a phonologically overt element. The analysis thus demonstrates that rich agreement must, minimally, be taken to mean the overt representation of features and not an abstract property. The parallelism between inversion and argument pro drop is obscured in Italian due to the language’s rich agreement, which can always assume the role of the feature assigner itself. In Hebrew, however, the role of the postverbal NP in licensing the null subject is revealed precisely by the variability in the capacity of AGR to support a null subject. I concluded by suggesting that the identity between the null subject of inversion and argument pro is perhaps less puzzling than it first sounds, when embedded in a theory of expletive replacement.

One issue which has been left vague in the discussion so far, concerns the formal relationship between the source of $\phi$ features and the null subject.

\textsuperscript{7} An alternative approach would be to treat both cases of pro as uniformly expletive at S-structure. We would then assume that in argumental pro drop cases, it is AGR itself, and not pro, which is assigned the external $\theta$-role. Expletive pro is then replaced by AGR in LF. This raises the question of the status of the Structure Preserving Constraint (SPC) of Emonds (1976), Chomsky (1986b) in LF. One possibility is that the SPC holds of move $\alpha$ which occurs prior to S-structure and that it is relaxed in LF, permitting an $X^0$ to move into a specifier position.
Insofar as INFL is the source of features, the relationship can be stated in
terms of government, maintaining, the (modified) version of Rizzi's (1986)
licensing schema given in (4a) above. In cases where the source is not INFL
but the postverbal NP itself, it is not clear what formal relationship holds
between pro and the source NP. At LF, to be sure, a chain is formed
incorporating the S-structure position of the postverbal NP as its tail and pro
as its head. But the chain is not formed until LF while the pro module is
operative at S-structure. Thus, it seems that the pro module (at S-structure)
is sensitive to A-chains formed in LF. pro's features are recovered (at S-
structure) by co-indexing with the appropriate (overt) features. This is the
formal relationship between pro and the source NP. Furthermore, in LF, this
coindexing is interpreted as a chain relationship, as seems natural. This has
the consequence of ruling-out feature recovery from a wh-word, since the
two do not form a chain.\(^6\)

Note, now, that coindexing pro and the postverbal NP at S-structure is
inconsistent with our explanation for why there is no Condition C violation in
expletive argument pairs. In 2.8 above, to recall, we argued that the
postverbal NP and the expletive do not need to be coindexed until LF, while
Condition C applies at S-structure. Put plainly, the contradiction is as follows:
the pro module requires that pro be coindexed with the postverbal NP at S-
structure but the binding theory requires that they not be thus coindexed.

---

\(^6\) See Borer (1987a) for discussion of pro which is controlled by a
matrix NP. I will not discuss those cases in this work.
Yet there is an alternative interpretation for the ungrammaticality of the examples (68) in Ch.2, which is consistent with the observation that Condition C is sensitive to S-structure representations.\footnote{Here I am following a suggestion of N. Chomsky (p.c.)}

(68) a. *he$_i$ likes [every picture of John$_i$]
    b. John$_i$ said that Bill had seen HIM$_i$

Suppose that the binding theory, much like Lasnik & Saito's (1984) ECP, has two components: A feature-assigning mechanism, which, in the case of Condition C, applies at S-structure, and a filter which applies in LF. Concretely, suppose that a Condition C violation is encoded at S-structure by marking the antecedent \([-\omega]\). The LF filter rules out sentences which contain such marks. Thus, in (68a), he is assigned \([-\omega]\) and the sentence is ruled out in LF. Conversely, John in (68b) is marked \([+\omega]\). Now, an expletive which is coindexed with a postverbal NP is indeed marked \([-\omega]\), just like he in (68a). The difference is that an expletive, but not he, is eliminated at LF, so that the filter applies to it vacuously. Since the feature \([-\omega]\) is eliminated along with the expletive, the sentence is not ruled out. This interpretation of Condition C allows pro and the postverbal NP to be coindexed at S-structure thus meeting the pro module.

5.7 An Argument in Favor of a Structural Subject Position

There have been a number of linguists, e.g., Adams (1987), Borer (1986), Travis (1984), who have advanced the position that in inversion...
constructions, there is no subject position other than the one occupied by the postverbal subject itself. For instance, Borer (1986:401) assumes that the [SPEC/IP] position is not obligatory. "...INFL does not require the presence of a particular position; rather, it requires a coindexed NP in some position."

Note, now, that the extraction facts discussed above provide an argument against the 'I-subjects' type of approach and in favor of a theory incorporating a 'strong' version of the 'Subject Stipulation', along the lines developed in ch.2. A theory which assigns a sentence such as (1) above, a structure such as (33), i.e., one bereft of a [SPEC/IP], would be hard pressed to explain why the postverbal subject is inextractable.

(33)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{IP} \\
\text{I} \\
\text{VP} \\
\text{V} \\
\text{NP}_{\text{SUBJ}}
\end{array}
\]

5.8 Expletive pro in Raising and Extraposition

In the previous sections, I discussed the conditions under which a null expletive of inversion is licensed. I claimed that null expletives of inversion need to be identified by overt features of person and number at S-Structure. Consider, now, the case of expletives associated with S' extraposition and Raising constructions, such as that illustrated in (34).
These cases are problematic at first glance. A postverbal subject, a clause in these examples, bears no features of person and number and yet a null subject pro is acceptable. Note that we cannot test for extractability in this case, because there is no wh-form for clauses. But that doesn't effect the main point which is that these sentences contradict, prima facie, the claim that null subjects must be identified by overt grammatical features such as person and number.

One possible way out of this dilemma, but one which I will not pursue, is afforded if we assume that the pro of Raising/extraposition is a 'true' expletive, as opposed to the null subject of inversion which, perhaps, is not. Following Rizzi's reasoning, then, a 'true' expletive needs only to be formally licensed and is not required to meet the feature assignment condition in (23). Rizzi's analysis, which rests on a classification carried out in Travis (1984), yields a tripartite distinction between referential null arguments, quasi-argumental null subjects and non-argumental, i.e. expletive null
subjects. Whatever else might be true, I think that the Hebrew facts show that it is inaccurate to lump together null subjects of inversion and null subjects of extraposition. But this would lead to a four way distinction between, arguments, quasi-arguments, expletives of inversion and expletives of Raising/extraposition. Surely something is being missed here, since the expletives of inversion are licensed under the same conditions as null arguments.

The alternative I will pursue makes only a two way distinction, on the one hand, between pro which is replaced in LF by an argument which requires a specification of person, typically, a referential NP and, on the other hand, pro replaced by an argument which is impersonal, typically an $S'$ or a non-referential NP argument. In effect, then, I propose to redistribute null expletives: Those of subject inversion will be treated like referential pro, while those of Raising/extraposition will be assimilated into the class of non-referential pro's which will also include the null subjects of weather and temporal predicates, pro$_{arb}$ and impersonal passives. I will suggest that the line of demarcation ought to be drawn between impersonal subjects, on the one hand and subjects which have a specification of person, on the other.

5.9 Argument pro-Drop in Hebrew and the Feature [+/-person]

As a point of departure, recall that I have, until now, been assuming that Hebrew differs from Italian in the degree to which AGR is endowed with overt $\_\phi$ features. Consider, now, the inflectional paradigm of Hebrew, given in table (35). I have starred the persons and tenses where argumental pro-
drop is unacceptable and have suppressed the phonological alternations induced by affixation.

(35) Inflectional paradigm with root "Smr" = 'guard'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Samar-ti</td>
<td>Samar-n-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2m</td>
<td>Samar-ta</td>
<td>Samar-t-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2f</td>
<td>Samar-t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3m</td>
<td>*Samar-Ø</td>
<td>*Samar-Ø-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3f</td>
<td>*Samar-Ø-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRESENT (participle)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*Somer</td>
<td>*Somer-im</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Putting aside the participial present tense, let us note that an argument on the basis of morphological overtness is hard to sustain, as a glance at future tense person morphology will tell. In the future tense, number, gender and person are all represented by discrete morphemes. Given all that has been said thus far, it is not clear why pro-drop should not be available in the future third person.

It is possible that the restriction on third person pro drop in the future is modelled on analogy with the past tense, where the morphology is overtly different in the first and second persons. But this begs the question of why the grammar is not set the other way around, with the future tense serving as the basis for analogy. Moreover, even in the past, where arguably the third person is not represented overtly, it is still clearly discrete since it is the only person which is non-overt.
In fact, let us strengthen these observations to the claim in (36).

(36) Hebrew past and future tense AGR is as rich in its $\phi$ features as is AGR in Italian.

This claim rests on the assumption that the absence of an overt feature, such as a third person affix in the past tense, can itself be taken to be a distinctive feature. This seems quite reasonable, especially since only one of the three persons, in the past tense, is unmarked and the language learner can unambiguously identify it. But if this is right then we must once again revise the feature assignment procedure which was tentatively given in (23). What needs to be said, I think, is that pro must be associated with discrete, rather than overt features. In order for a non-overt feature to be discrete, there must be at most one non-overt feature in a given paradigm; all the rest must be overt.

(37) **Feature Assignment/Recoverability**

- Coindex pro with phonologically discrete grammatical features

But now we are faced with the task of explaining the restrictions on Hebrew pro drop. Following Benveniste (1966), my approach will be to capitalize on an obvious difference between first and second persons, on the one hand, and third person, on the other. That first and second person differ, in some fundamental way, from the third person is a well-noted fact. Thus, first and second person are always presupposed in a discourse, while third person is not. Moreover, first and second persons are intrinsically argumental.
whereas third person may be an argument or a non-argument. There couldn’t be first and second person expletives.¹⁰

Let us suppose, then, that first and second person are inherently persons, while third person is, in principle, ambiguous between a personal reading and an impersonal one.

Let us further suppose that the theory of markedness regards as unmarked only the inherent persons, first and second. Third person, in the unmarked case, is treated as impersonal. Thus by the theory of markedness, the Hebrew paradigm constitutes the unmarked case. For a speaker to learn that Italian third person can be a person as well as impersonal, positive evidence must be accumulated.

Imagine that in order for third person to be regarded as a person, it is assigned the feature [+p]. If it is [-p] it is interpreted as impersonal. Thus the marked nature of Italian agreement can be captured by the following rule,

(36) Assign [+p] to the third person marker

The grammar of Hebrew, being unmarked for this feature, contains no such rule. The feature [p], I assume, is assigned along with the person features, in accordance with the assignment/recoverability procedure (37).

¹⁰ "The “third person” is not a “person”; it is really the verbal form whose function is to express the non-person" (Benveniste, p.198.)
A pro which is assigned features by a third person which is [+p] can be replaced by an argument bearing a personal third person in LF. When the specification for [p] is negative, only an impersonal argument can appear in the position occupied by pro. In Hebrew, where the third person is [+p] only in the first and second person AGR, and [-p] in third person AGR, since rule (38) does not apply, an argument bearing a person feature can only appear either with first or second person agreement, or, alternatively, when the feature [+p] can be assigned to pro by an overt, or, what amounts to the same thing in this instance, a phonologically discrete third person NP. Thus, we can maintain our prior generalization that the pro of inversion must be associated with an overt element at S-structure. The only modification that needs to be introduced is that the overt element is needed not in order to assign a person feature which a putatively impoverished AGR cannot, but rather to supply pro with the feature [+p], which AGR, although perfectly rich, is not marked for.

This analysis predicts that null subjects which are replaced by impersonal subjects may appear with third person inflection. In addition to the Raising/extraposition examples in (34), we can see that this prediction is borne out w.r.t impersonal passives in (39), temporal predicates, (40), and constructions with proarb as in (41).

(39) a. nixtav 'al-av ba-iton
   write-passive about-him in-the-paper
   'it was written about him in the paper'

   b. huxiat 'al ha'azzarat ha-plitim
   decide-past-passive on return the-refugees
   'it was decided on the return of the refugees'
(40) a. kar
   cold
   'it is cold'

b. meSa'amem
   boring
   'it is boring'

(41) a. be-Tel Aviv Sotim capuccino 'im kacefet
    in-Tel Aviv drink +1pl capuccino with whipped cream
    'in Tel Aviv (they) drink capuccino with whipped cream'

b. hifsiku li-mkor sigariot ba-kiosk
    stop -1pl -past to-sell cigarettes in-the-kiosk
    '(they) stopped selling cigarettes at the kiosk'

The sentences in (39)-(41) all illustrate impersonal subjects which, as we can plainly see, are permitted with third person inflection.

The proposal that the person marker needs to be specified for whether is it to be interpreted as a person marker or as impersonal has the consequence of enriching the pro module by the addition of another parameter. The proposal bears similarity to Borer's (1983) proposal that the third person AGR in Hebrew is marked [-referential]. I have chosen not to use this feature since it is not clear to me what implicit commitment it entails for e.g., the referential status of clauses. The intuition behind both ideas, I think, is the same, namely, that morphological explicitness and formal licensing are not sufficient to license a null subject. I am also taking a neutral position w.r.t to Borer's recent proposal that third person AGR in Hebrew is anaphoric, (Borer (1987).)
Let me summarize the discussion. I have argued that by the admission of a third factor into the licensing theory for pro, the feature [p], we can achieve a more precise characterization of different grammatical systems. Hebrew is like Italian in having both a formally licensed pro and a rich agreement system. It differs, from it, however, in having impersonal, that is, [-p] third person agreement. In English, pro is simply not formally licensed. As for French, let me tentatively suggest that French, like Hebrew, has an impersonal third person, but it differs from Italian and Hebrew in lacking a fully discrete system of person features. This would account for the fact that Hebrew, but not French allows null non-referential null subjects such as quasi arguments. The non-extractability of postverbal subjects in Hebrew is due, I claimed, to the incapacity of AGR to mark pro as [+p], even though it is perfectly able to mark it for φ features.

The approach to pro-drop developed in Adams (1987) and Rizzi (1986) establishes two distinct conditions that a null subject has to meet in order to be licensed, a government requirement, (government by a head in its canonical direction for Adams, Case marking by a head for Rizzi,) and a binding relation - 'feature identification'.

The analysis presented in this chapter suggests that the two conditions are truly separate and quite independent of each other since they can be met by pro by association with two different elements, (INFL for the government requirement, the postverbal subject for feature identification.)

Such approaches have the consequence of making the pro module similar in content to the ECP, under versions which consider it to consist of two
distinct principles (e.g., Chomsky (1986b).) A direct object trace, for example, meets the government requirement of the ECP through association with the governing verb and is antecedent-governed, i.e. feature-identified, by association with a chain. Both conditions can be met by association with a single element: This is so in passive and Raising constructions, where the trace of a passivized element is both head-governed and antecedent-governed by V. Of the two conditions, head-government seems to be a general condition which applies to empty and overt categories alike (for Case purposes, for example.) Feature identification, on the other hand, appears to be a condition specific to empty categories. But this is only so because it is a condition on chains. An overt element in a 0-position trivially satisfies 'antecedent government' since it is a single membered chain and antecedent governs itself. If this line of thought is correct, then there is no ECP, per se, or a pro-module, but only general conditions on chains and arguments, as argued, originally, by Bouchard (1982).
CHAPTER 6
THE BE/HAVE ALTERNATION: POSSESSIVES, EXISTENTIALS AND LOCATIVES IN HEBREW

6.1 Chapter Outline

This chapter attends to some aspects of the syntax of existential and possessive constructions, illustrated in (1a) and (1b).

(1) a. **Possessive**
   
yeS/haya/yhiye le-nanan sefer
   'Hanan has/had/will have a book'

   b. **Existential/Locative**
   
yeS/haya/yhiye sefer 'al ha-madaf
   'a book is/was/will be on the-shelf'

The outline of the discussion is, as follows. I begin by considering the special character of the verb yeS, which is the present tense form used in possessives and existentials. I then proceed to the categorial status of the dative possessor in, e.g., (1a), concluding that albeit being a PP, it is the clausal subject in the possessive construction.

An interesting fact about the Hebrew verb yeS is that it assigns accusative Case when used in its possessive guise as well as in a subclass of locative phrases which may be characterized as quasi-possessive. It is shown that
yes is basically ambiguous between be, taking a single argument, and have, which assigns two θ-roles.

Some problems w.r.t. verbal agreement, particularly with the h.y.y, i.e., the future and past tense forms of be/have, are discussed in the final section.

6.2 The status of yes

Doron (1983) notes that the verb yes differs in a number of ways from the past and future forms of h.y.y. Most obvious, perhaps, is the fact that yes is morphologically unrelated to the past and future forms of the verb, which derive from the triconsonantal root h.y.y. The root, h.y.y, however, is 'defective' in that it does not have a present tense form. Rather, it's morphological present tense is an optional nominative pronoun, as shown in (2). This is argued for, in detail, in Berman and Grosu (1976), Doron (1983), Rappoport (1987) and I refer the reader to those works for a development of these ideas.

(2) a. Dani haya more
   D. was teacher

b. Dani yhiye more
   Dani will be teacher

c. Dani (hu) more
   Dani (the) teacher

Arguably, the defectiveness of h.y.y carries over to the possessive construction. This construction differs, however, from the copular one in that the vacancy left in the verbal paradigm of h.y.y is filled by the particle
yeS and not by a pronoun. In the copular construction, the nominative pronoun is entirely optional, as shown by (3c). In contrast, yeS-less possessive clauses are restricted to a formal register and are rarely found in colloquial speech.

(3)  
a. le-Dani haya more  
\textit{Dat-Dani be:have-PAST teacher}
'Dani had a teacher'

b. le-Dani yhiye more  
\textit{Dat-Dani be:have-FUT teacher}
'Dani will have a teacher'

c. le-Dani ??(yeS) more  
\textit{Dat-Dani be:have-PRES teacher}
'Dani (has) a teacher'

Doron (op. cit.), also notes that yeS never appears as an auxiliary, in contrast to h.y.y. In (4a), the past tense form of h.y.y is used along with a present participle; in (4b), the future form of this root appears with a predicate nominal. Neither one is possible with yeS, (4c), (4d).

(4)  
a. Xanan haya rac le-betsefer  
\textit{Xanan h.yy-ims-PAST run-PARTICIPLE to-school}
'Hanan used to run'

b. Xanan yhiye more  
\textit{Xanan h.yy-ims-FUT teacher}
'Hanan will be a teacher'

c. *Xanan yeS rac le-betsefer  
\textit{run-PARTICIPLE to-school}

d. *Xanan yeS more
The more restricted distribution of yeS, in comparison with the forms derived from h.y.y, shows that yeS is truly a different verb which fills in some, but not all of the gaps in the h.y.y paradigm.

There are other differences between yeS and the forms derived from h.y.y., primarily in the patterns of verbal agreement, but since those are rather complex, I put off discussion of them to section 6.14. In order to facilitate the presentation, then, I will discuss the possessive and existential constructions with yeS first, coming back, in a later section, to the h.y.y forms.

To conclude this factual presentation, note that the verb yeS has a negative counterpart, ein, which patterns exactly like yeS, (5a). To obtain the negative reading with the h.y.y.-derived forms, the negation particle io appears to the left of the verb, as shown by (5b,c,).

(5)  a. le-Dani  ein  more  \\
     DAT-Dani  neg  be/have-PRES  teacher  \\
     'Dani does not have a teacher'

     b. le-Dani  lo  haya  more  \\
     DAT-Dani  neg  be/have-PAST  teacher  \\
     'Dani did not have a teacher'

     c. le-Dani  lo  yhiye  more  \\
     DAT-Dani  neg  be/have-FUT  teacher  \\
     'Dani will have a teacher'

While yeS and ein pattern in the same way in the possessive construction, (Doron, op. cit.), rather substantial differences emerge in the existential/locative construction, due to the fact that ein has an allomorph
which has the role of sentential negation. I will not discuss the particle ein in this work.¹

6.3 The Categorial Status of the Dative Possessor: le-Phrase as a PP

Borer and Grodzinsky (1986) claim that the dative element does not display the branching characteristic of genuine PP’s. The evidence is taken from the domain of anaphoric binding: A le-NP can serve as antecedent for an anaphor inside a PP while a ‘im-NP cannot. The conclusion that B&G draw is that le-NP is a dative marked NP, which does not branch, while ‘im-NP is a true PP.

(6) a. Xanan siper le-Aliza ’al acma
    Xanan told to-Aliza about herself

b. *Xanan diber ’im Aliza ’al acma
    Xanan spoke with Aliza about herself

While the facts in (6) are certainly robust, I take issue with the interpretation given to them by B&G. The capacity of an antecedent to bind an anaphor from within a le-NP does not necessarily imply that the dative phrase is a NP. It is also compatible with the view that dative phrases are PP’s, but that the affinal nature of the dative preposition or Case marker allows the index of the NP within the PP to percolate up to the PP node so that the PP ends up bearing an index and can serve as an antecedent for anaphor binding.

¹ For discussion see Borer (1983), Doron (op. cit.), Ritter (1985) among others.
Whereas the possessive datives under discussion are constructed of a NP and an affixed Case marker (or preposition), exactly the same sort of index percolation seems to be necessary in PP's where a prepositional object pronoun is cliticized onto a preposition in a configuration such as (8).

The argument, due to Sells (1984) as follows. Borer (1984), Sells (1984) noted that the [-wh] complementizer Se- in Hebrew may delete when it is flanked by two elements bearing the same referential index. This state of affairs arises when the complementizer appears between a wh-operator on its left and a preposed or Topicalized NP on its right.²

Delete Se in the environment .....op₁ Se XP₁.....

Consider the three relative clauses in (10) and the relevant structure in (11).

² This is a somewhat simplified statement of the conditions for complementizer deletion in Hebrew. For further elaboration, see Shlonsky (forthcoming).
(10) a. ha-baxur (Se)-oto ra'iti
    the-guy that-him I saw
    'the guy that I saw'

b. ha-baxur (Se)-imo yacati le-seret
    the-guy that-with-him I went out to-movie
    'the guy that I went to the movie with'

c. ha-baxur *(Se)-imo yac'a le-seret
    the-guy that-mother+his went out to-movie
    'the guy that his mother went to the movie'

(11) the guy [CP op\_Se[IP [IP .............]]]
    (PP)

In (10a), and (10b), Se may delete; in (10c) it may not. The crucial contrast is between the homophous PP and NP in (10b) and (10c). Assume, following Borer (1983), that the structure of the NP imo and the PP imo is similar: (10c) is a clitic configuration headed by N to which a pronominal clitic is attached and (10b) is a clitic configuration headed by P. Yet Se may only be dropped when the clitic configuration is headed by P.

(12) a. PP
    P'      NP\_1
    [e\_i]
    P+cl\_i. with
    him

b. NP\_1
    N\_1
    N\_1+cl\_i. mother
    his

Se may not be deleted in the NP case, (10b), since the index of the maximal projection of N bears the index of mother- the head N- and not of the clitic his. The relativized NP in (10c), and thus the operator to the left of the
complementizer, are coindexed with his not with mother. The condition for complementizer deletion is not met because the flanking operator and NP do not bear the same index.

In order to understand why the deletion of Se is possible in (10b), we must recall that P, as opposed to N, is not a referential expression and therefore does not bear an index. In a PP, in contrast to an NP, no conflict arises between the index of the pronominal clitic and that of the head because the head of the PP does not bear a referential index. This intuition can be implemented if we assume that when P and NP amalgamate, both in the case of the possessive datives above as well as in cases of pronominal cliticization to P, the index of the NP can percolate upwards and the dominating PP displays the index of an NP embedded within it. Thus, the PP in (10b) can be represented as (13).

(13)
It is thus possible to maintain the view that the dative NP's are not NP's but indexed PP's. As such, they may count as antecedents for the purposes of binding.3

In 6.6, we shall see that treating the dative phrase as a PP has an additional advantage: It explains why possessor subjects are treated as 'impersonal' by verbal agreement. We shall see that agreement is always with an NP; indexed PP's, though arguments, count as impersonal w.r.t agreement.

6.4 The Grammatical Function of the Dative Possessor

---

3 Left unexplained, however, is the contrast between (i) and (ii) below. Note however, that while (iii) is grammatical, so is (iv), suggesting that there are other factors involved here.

(i) Xanan siper 1-a\textsubscript{l} [\textsubscript{PP} 'al acma\textsubscript{l}]  
    Xanan told to-\textsubscript{her}, about herself

(ii) *Xanan diber 'im-a\textsubscript{l} [\textsubscript{PP} 'al acma\textsubscript{l}]  
    Xanan spoke with-\textsubscript{her}, about herself

(iii) Xanan\textsubscript{i} diber 'im-a\textsubscript{l} [\textsubscript{PP} 'al acmo\textsubscript{l}]  
    Xanan spoke to-\textsubscript{her}, about himself

(iv) Xanan\textsubscript{i} siper 1-a\textsubscript{l} [\textsubscript{PP} 'al acmo\textsubscript{l}]  
    Xanan told to-\textsubscript{her}, about himself
The main thrust of this section is to show that the dative in the possessive construction is an argument of the verb, indeed, that it is the subject of the clause. I will show,

(a) that the dative is obligatory, an indication that it is an argument which receives a \( \theta \)-role.
(b) that it can be co-occur with an internally possessed NP.
(c) that it shows up in argument positions, specifically, in the clausal subject position.

Consider (14). If the dative in (14) is, indeed, an argument of the verb, one expects it to co-occur with a possessed NP since it’s thematic relationship to the possessed NP is mediated by the theta marking verb and it has no access to the internal structure of the possessed NP.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(14) } & \text{Yes/haya } le-Dani sefer Sel Aliza} \\
& \text{be } DAT-Dani book of Aliza} \\
& \text{Dani has Aliza’s book’}
\end{align*}
\]

If the dative possessor, were anything but an argument of the verb, i.e., if it were related directly to the NP as e.g., a possessor internal to the NP, or an adjunct predicate of sorts, it could not co-occur with an NP which has an internal possessor.

The dative which occurs with \text{yes} is, moreover, obligatory. The simplest interpretation of this fact is that it is an argument which is \( \theta \)-marked by the verb.
Consider, now, the fact that the dative can occur preverbally with no stress intonation typical of a Topic reading. The stress intonation of (15a) is identical to that of (15b), a transitive clause with an agentive subject, which suggests that the dative phrase occupies the subject position rather than a preverbal Topic position. Preverbal themes, as in (15c), are acceptable only under Topic intonation.

(15) a. le-Dani yeS sefer
    DAT-Dani is book
    'Dani has a book'

    b. Xanan kara sefer
    Xanan read book
    'Hanan read a book'

    c. SEFER, yeS le-Dani
    A BOOK, is DAT-Dani

Mimicking a test for subjecthood proposed in Belletti & Rizzi (1986), note that extraction over a topicalized dative is quite marginal, (16a), (17a) while extraction over the possessor dative in (16b), (17b) is far more natural. 4

4 When the verb 'to be/to have' is not followed by phonologically-overt material, the order [...NP_{DAT} V] is unacceptable, (i).

(i) *ze ha-sefer Se-le-xanan yeS
    this the-book that-DAT-Hanan is
    'this is the book that Hanan has'

While I have no account for this fact, I think it relates to a similar restriction on existential constructions in English, as shown in the contrast between (ii) and (iii).

(ii) a man is in the room

(iii) *a man is
(16) a. ??ze ha-sefer Se-le-xanan nata-ti etmol
    this the-book that-to-Hanan gave-yms yesterday
    'this is the book that to Hanan I gave yesterday'

    b. ze ha-sefer Se-le-xanan yeS ba-bayt
    this the-book that-to-Hanan is at-the-house
    'this is the book that Hanan had at home'

(17) a. ??lo yada-ti ma le-xanan nata-ti etmol
    neg knew-yms what DAT-Hanan gave-yms yesterday
    'I didn't know what, to Hanan, did I give?'

    b. lo yada-ti ma le-xanan yeS ba-bayt
    neg knew-yms what DAT-Hanan is in-the-house
    'I didn't know what Hanan has at home?'

Note, now, that (16,17b), while certainly better than (16,17a), are still not
perfect. (16,17b) are somewhat degraded in comparison with sentences
where the le-phrase appears to the right of the verb yeS, i.e., inside VP, as
in (18) below.

(18) a. lo yada-ti ma yeS le-xanan ba-bayt
    neg knew-yms what is DAT-Hanan in-the-house

    b. ze ha-sefer Se-yeS le-xanan ba-bayt
    this the-book that-is to-Hanan at-the-house

Suppose, then, that the dative phrase in (16,17b) is not, in fact, in the
subject position, as but in Topic position, adjoined to IP (cf. Stowell (1981).)
We may then try to explain the difference between (16,17a) and (16,17b) in
the following terms. (I am grateful to R. Kayne for pointing this out to me this idea which is due originally to J. Frampton.)

The basic difference between (16,17a) and (16,17b) is that in (16,17a) both the Topicalized and the wh-moved element originate in VP while in (16,17b), the dative PP is Topicalized from the clausal subject position, to which it is previously (A)-moved from inside VP. (16,17a) involve Topicalization (i.e, adjunction to IP) and wh-movement from inside VP while in (16,17b) there is only wh-movement from inside VP and Topicalization proceeds from the subject position.

Let us see how a 'Barriers' type approach can be made to account for the gradation in acceptability discernable in these sentences. Consider, first, the phrase marker in (19), which corresponds to the (b) examples in (16) and (17). Let us follow Belletti & Rizzi (1986: ft.27) in assuming that the defective character of IP, its incapacity to be an inherent barrier, holds only when IP is monosegmental. When an element is adjoined to IP, IP is no longer defective. Thus, movement of NP₁ over IP in (19) crosses a single barrier, IP. This produces a mild 'single barrier' violation, accounting for the contrast between (16,17b) and the sentences in (18) where no Topicalization has taken place.

(19)

```
NP₁ → CP → IP₁ → IP₂ → I → VP₂ → VP₁ → t₁
PP₁ → t₁
```

Consider, now, (20), which corresponds to the more deviant (16, 17). Movement of NP across the Topicalized PP again crosses the weak barrier formed by the bi-segmental IP. Yet the degraded character of (16, 17a) suggests that an additional barrier is crossed.

\[(20)\]

```
NP_j \rightarrow CP \rightarrow IP \rightarrow IP_i \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow VP_1
```

\[PP_i \rightarrow NP \rightarrow I \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow [PP t_i] \]

\[\ldots \rightarrow [PP t_i] \]

\[\ldots \rightarrow [PP t_i] \]
The obvious place to look for the additional violation is in the multiple extraction from VP. Consider the VP in (20) closely. It differs from the VP in (19), in having three segments. Moreover, each extraction path, that of NP₁ and that of PP₁, crosses one segment of VP which does not immediately dominate it. One might suppose that a segment of a category acts as a barrier for elements which are not excluded by the category of which it is a segment and which it doesn’t immediately dominate.⁵

Crossing of a single barrier produces only mild ill-formedness, the sensitivity to which is rather variable among speakers. Yet even speakers who find (16, 17b) marginal, sense a clear contrast between those sentences and those in (16, 17a), where two barriers are crossed. The contrast is accounted for under the hypothesis that segments participate in the calculation of barriers in the manner discussed.

Note, moreover, that even (16, 17a) are not as bad as, say, 2-barrier violations in English wh-movement. In the latter case, the barriers crossed are all maximal projections while the barriers crossed in (16, 17a) are

---

⁵ One might consider relating the barrierhood of a bi-segmental IP and the case of multiple extraction from VP. Suppose that in both cases a segment may inherit barrierhood from some categorial projection which is in some sense defective. In the case of VP, the category does not dominate an adjoined trace, (since not every segment of it does,) while IP is defective in some other sense. But in both cases, a higher segment can inherit barrierhood from lower segments w.r.t an element which it doesn’t immediately dominate. In (20), then, VP₃ is a barrier for PP₁ by inheritance from the set {VP₂, VP₁}. Likewise, VP₂ is a barrier for t₁, since it doesn’t immediately dominate t₁. In (19), IP₁ inherits barrierhood from IP₂ w.r.t trace adjoined to VP.
segments. As Belletti & Rizzi speculate, it seems natural that a barrier yields a stronger violation when it is a category than when it is a segment.

Returning to the main topic of discussion, note that this array of facts again suggests that the le-NP in (16,17b) but not in (16,17a), while perhaps not in the actual subject position at S-structure, (or PF), nevertheless moves through that position in the course of its Topicalization.

6.5 The Status of the Possessed NP

The following set of examples demonstrate that the theme NP patterns like an object and not like a subject under LF extraction. The sentences in (21) illustrate a typical superiority paradigm: An object wh-word but not a subject can remain in-situ. If ma in (22b) were subject-like, (22b) should be wellformed, like (21a). The fact that it is illformed, shows ma in (22) is an object.

(21) a. ma₁ meziz ma₂?
    what moves what

   b. *ma₂ ma₁ meziz?

(22) a. le-mi yeS ma
    DAT-who has what

   b. *ma le-mi yeS or *ma yeS le-ni⁶

⁶ See ft. 4 above.
Consider, now, the fact that the possessed NP, the theme, is marked with accusative Case, as indicated by the obligatory presence of the particle et when it is definite.

(23) a. yeS l-i et ha-banana
   *is to-me acc the banana
   'I have this banana'

b. le-Dani yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze
   DAT-Dani is acc the-book the-this
   'Dani has this book'

A pronominal theme in a possessive construction always appears in the accusative form of the pronoun, never in its nominative form.

(24) a. yeS l-i oto
   *is to-me it-ACC
   'I have it'

b. *yeS l-i hu
   *is to-me it-NOM

Moreover, the theme may not be moved into the subject position, (25a). Even when et does not appear, i.e., when the theme is indefinite, it may still not raise into the subject position, (25b). The sentences in (25) are acceptable only when the fronted theme is stressed. The fronted theme does not trigger agreement on the verb, which remains third person singular even though the NP in question, bananas is feminine plural.

(25) a. *et ha-banana yeS le-xanan
   acc the-banana is DAT-Xanan

b. *banana yeS le-xanan
Note, also, that extraction across the fronted theme is marginally unacceptable, (26), providing further evidence that it is adjoined to IP and not in subject position. (26) should be contrasted with an example such as (27), where the possessed NP is extracted over the possessor, as in (17b) above.

(26) a. ??le-eize yeled lo xaSav-ti  Se-et ha-ca'acu'a
    DAT-which child neg thought-lms that acc the-toy
    ha-ze yeS kvar harbe zman
    the-this is already long time

    'to which child didn't I know that these toys belong (to him) already for a while'

b. ??le-eize yeled lo xaSav-ti  Se-harbe ca'acu'im yeS
    DAT-which child neg thought-lms that many toys is
    kvar  harbe zman
    already long time

    'to which child didn't I know that many toys belong (to him) already for a while'

(27) eize ca'acu'a lo xaSav-ti  Se-ile-xanan yeS kvar harbe zman
    which toy neg thought-lms that-DAT-Xanan is already long time
    'which toy didn't I think that Hanan has already a long time'

On the basis of the evidence surveyed in this section, the following statements appear to be true.

(a) The dative in the possessive construction is the subject of the construction.
(b) The possessed NP or theme is the object of the construction.

We must still ascertain whether the possessive dative is an internal or an external argument. Put differently, is it an underlying object of yes or a subject? The question is of particular importance since the dative NP may freely occur either to the left or to the right of the verb, as shown in (28),

(28) a. yeS/haya le-Dani sefer
    b. le-Dani yeS/haya sefer

Recalling the discussion in Ch.4, verb-initial clauses are restricted, in Hebrew, to unaccusative verbs and a small class of 'presentational' unergative predicates. Suppose that the possessive dative is an underlying subject, moved rightwards and adjoined to VP in (28a). Even if we put aside the obvious word order problem, such a derivation implies that dative Case can be assigned directly to a subject. However, there is no evidence whatsoever that INFL in Hebrew is capable of assigning dative Case. Moreover, dative is an inherent Case, linked to a $\theta$-role. Inherently Case-marked objects, for example, receive their Case from V which assigns them a theta role. But w.r.t. clausal subjects, Case and $\theta$-assignment bifurcate: A clausal subject is theta-marked by V or VP and Case marked by INFL. Thus, allowing dative subjects to be generated in the subject position means divorcing inherent Case from $\theta$-role assignment, which results in the loss of some explanatory power w.r.t. the behavior of inherently Case-marked NP's in e.g. NP's. (See Chomsky (1986a) for discussion.)
Furthermore, if the possessive dative is not an NP, but really a PP, the grammar of Hebrew must be set so as to allow PP’s to be base-generated as subjects and the natural question to ask, then, is why Hebrew does not display an abundance of PP subjects.

But there is also direct empirical evidence that the D-structure position of the dative phrase is, indeed, in the VP and not in the subject position. The evidence is that pronominal possessive datives pattern like subcategorized benefactive datives in obligatorily cliticizing onto the verb.

When a dative NP is pronominal in Hebrew, it is obligatorily a clitic, (Borer (1983)). We can convince ourselves of that by considering the data in (29) and (30). Whereas the order of the direct and indirect objects in the double object (dative) construction in Hebrew is free, although preference is given to the order V NP\text{DAT} NP\text{ACC} , (29a ), the dative object, by contrast, must appear adjacent to the verb when it is pronominal, (30).

(29)  a. Xanan natan le-Aliza neSika  
\hspace{1cm} Xanan gave to-Aliza kiss  

b. ?Xanan natan neSika le-Aliza  
\hspace{1cm} Xanan gave kiss to-Aliza  

(30)  a. Xanan natan 1-a neSika  
\hspace{1cm} Xanan gave to-her kiss  

b. *Xanan natan neSika 1-a  
\hspace{1cm} Xanan gave kiss to-her
The clitic nature of a pronominal dative is preserved in the possessive construction, as evidenced by the impossibility of inserting an adverb between the verb and the dative possessor in (31).\footnote{More generally, the possessive datives differ from the benefactive ones in disallowing altogether the order where the theme in adjacent to the verb, i.e., V NP\textsubscript{theme} PP\textsubscript{dative}. Thus, the equivalent of (29b) in the possessive construction is much worse,}

\begin{enumerate}
    \item [31] \begin{tabular}{ll}
        a. & *\textit{yeS tamid} \textit{I-o} \textit{tapuxim} \\
        & \textit{is} \textit{always} \textit{DAT-him} \textit{apples}.
        & \textit{he always has apples}.
        \\
        b. & \textit{yeS I-o tamid tapuxim}
    \end{tabular}
\end{enumerate}

\textfootnote{More generally, the possessive datives differ from the benefactive ones in disallowing altogether the order where the theme in adjacent to the verb, i.e., V NP\textsubscript{theme} PP\textsubscript{dative}. Thus, the equivalent of (29b) in the possessive construction is much worse,}

This difference is, perhaps, due to the fact that the possessive dative is base-generated as a left sister to V; i.e. in a VP such as (ii), while in the double object construction it is in a complement small clause, (iii).

\begin{enumerate}
    \item (i) \textit{??yeS tapuxim le-Dani} \\
        \textit{is apples to-Dani} \textit{Dani has apples}.
    \item (ii) \textit{[vP le-Dani [v yeS tapuxim]]}
    \item (iii) \textit{[vP [v natan [S de-Dani tapuxim]]]}
\end{enumerate}

The surface order of constituents in the possessive construction, (ii), is derived by movement of the verb leftwards into INFL.

Note, also, that although (iv) is acceptable when the adverb is focalized, (v) remains unacceptable even under focal stress.

\begin{enumerate}
    \item (iv) \textit{yeS tamid le-DANI tapuxim} \\
        \textit{is always DAT-Dani apples} \textit{Dani always has apples}.
    \item (v) \textit{*yeS tamid I-O tapuxim}
\end{enumerate}
It would be rather marked if the le-phrase were to cliticize onto the verb from the subject position. A more reasonable view is that it is internal to VP at D-structure, and it is from the VP-internal position that it may cliticize onto V.

Let us, then, assume that the possessive dative is an internal argument of *yes*. The verb *yes* is an unaccusative verb which takes a direct object and does not assign a 0-role to its subject. It does, however, assign accusative Case and thus counterexemplifies Burzio's claim that the principle (32) is a linguistic universal, (as noted by Borer (1983), Doron (1983).)

(32) A verb (with an object) Case-marks its object if and only if it 0-marks its subject
6.6 Accusative Objects in Locative Constructions

A number of linguists have discussed the fact that accusative Case is assigned to the theme not only of possessive constructions, but also to the theme of locative sentences, as shown in (33).⁶

(33) a. yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze / oto ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    be acc the-book the-this / it in-the-library the-national
    'this book/it is (to be found) in the national library'

b. yeS et ha-meilim ha-elu / otam be-kol xanut
    be acc the-coats the-these / them in-every store
    'these coats/they are (to be found) in every store'

c. yeS et ha-mexonit ha-zot / ota ecel kol
    be acc the-car-fem the-this-fem / it-fem chez every
    soxen ba-arec
    agent in-the country
    'this car/it is (to be found) chez every dealer in the country'

These sentences share the structure given in (34).

(34) yeS et NP locative PP

Note, first, that the theme NP must appear with et when it is definite, hence the ungrammaticality of (35).

(35) a. *yeS ha-sefer ha-ze ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    is the-book the-this in-the-library the-national

b. *yeS ha-meilim ha-elu be-kol xanut
    is the-coats the-these in-every store

4) c. *yeS ha-mexonit ha-zot ecel kol soxen
    is the-car-fem the-this-fem chez every agent

The ungrammaticality of (35) is due to the fact that yeS in these sentences assigns accusative Case to its theme object just as it does in the possessive construction examined above.

Unlike the possessive construction, however, the theme NP in these locative sentences may be fronted into the clausal subject position, as in (36) below.

(36) a. ha-sefer ha-ze yeS-no ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    the-book the-this is-3ms in-the-library the-national
    'this book is (can be found) in the national library'

    b. ha-mellim ha-elu yeS-nam be-kol nanut
    the-coats the-these is-3pl in-every store
    'these coats can be found in every store'

    c. ha-mexonit ha-zot yeS-na ecel kol soxen
    the-car-fem the-this-fem is-3fs chez every dealer
    'this car can be found chez every dealer'

Two properties characterize yeS-sentences in which the theme is fronted:
The accusative marker et is absent and an agreement suffix appears on the verbal element yeS. Let us assume, on the basis of these two properties, that the fronted theme in (36) is nominative.

The sentences in (36) should be compared to possessive sentences, i.e., to (37), where fronting the theme NP is unacceptable, with or without overt agreement, a fact we noted w.r.t the examples in (25).
Descriptively, then, the possessive construction differs from the locative one in that in the former, yeS assigns accusative Case to its object obligatorily and, moreover, takes a dative-marked possessor as its subject. In the locative construction, on the other hand, yeS is ambiguous: It may pattern like the possessive yeS, taking an accusative object and— as we shall shortly see—a locative subject, or it may behave like an unaccusative verb taking a single theme complement, which appears in the subject position and triggers agreement.

This ambiguity in the status of yeS correlates with an ambiguity in its meaning or use: It assumes the semantic role of both 'have' and 'be' and may be used to denote possession as well as existence. Let us take the correlation of these two sorts of ambiguities literally: Assume that in its possessive use, yeS is indeed like 'have', that is, a verb which assigns accusative Case, as in 'John has the book' while in its existential/locative function, it is, like 'be', an unaccusative verb, as in 'John is in the room' or 'there is a man in the room'.

Let us, then, suppose, that in its existential guise, yeS takes a small clause complement, to which it assigns a single θ-role. The possessive yeS, on the other hand, is a two-argument verb. The putative structures are given in (38). I propose that the dative NP in the possessive construction appears as a left sister to V'. (cf. also ft. 7 above, p.249) The correct order of the two arguments, NP_{DAT}NP_{ACC} is derived when yeS fronts to I.
We have seen that in the possessive construction, *yes* is unambiguously 'have': The theme is accusative and the possessor is the clausal subject. The difference between the Hebrew 'have' and 'have' in, say, English or Romance, is that in the latter cases, the possessor is nominative while in Hebrew it is assigned an inherent dative Case. This difference, however, is superficial in nature since both in Hebrew and in English/Romance the possessor NP is a member of a nominative Chain. In Romance, there are no dative possessor subjects although there are dative experiencer subjects in the class of psych-verb constructions exemplified by the Italian verb piacere, for instance. Furthermore, dative (quirky) subjects are quite common in many languages, (e.g., Icelandic).

But let us return, now, to the 'have/be' alternation observed in the locative sentences in (33) and (36). Consider, first, the 'have'-type sentences, (33).

---

9 Gueron (1987) argues, in fact, that French *avoir* and English *have* have phonologically unexpressed dative possessor subjects, making those verbs even closer to the Hebrew construction under examination.
The theme, we see, is marked accusative and therefore cannot be a member of the nominative chain, that is, it cannot be the NP replacing the null expletive in LF.

(39) a. *et ha-sefer ha-ze yeS ba-sifriya ha-leumit
the-book the-this is in-the-library the-national

b. *et ha-mellim ha-elu yeS be-kol xanut
the-coats the-these is in-every store

c. *et ha-mexonit ha-zot yeS ecel kol soxen
the-car-fem the-this-fem is chez every dealer

Furthermore, we see in (40) that it cannot appear in the subject position altogether, (unless, of course, yeS is inflected, as in (36) above. There, however, yeS appears in its existential guise and the theme is nominative.) Note that it is Case and not definiteness which is relevant here, since even an indefinite theme, i.e. one which does not require marking with et, is systematically barred from the clausal subject position.

(40) a. *sefer ka-ze yeS ba-sifriya ha-leumit
book like-this is in-the-library the-national

b. *meilim ka-elu yeS be-kol xanut
costs like-these is in-every store

c. *mexonit ka-zot yeS ecel kol soxen
car-fem like-his-fem is chez every dealer

If the theme is not the subject, it behooves us to ask whether the locative PP can assume the subject position. Since clauses require subjects, something must be associated with that position.
Interestingly, the range of PP's which can co-occur with an accusative theme is rather restricted, (41).

\[(41)\text{ Yes et ha-sefer ha-ze ba-xanut}\text{ in-the store}\]
\[(42)\text{ is acc the-book the-this ecel Dani chez Dani}\text{ on the-shelf}\]
\*[\text{al ha-madaf on the-shelf}]\]
\*[\text{mi-taxat la-Sultan under the-table}]\]
\*[\text{ba-aron in-the-cupboard}]\]

Contrast (41) with (42), where an indefinite theme can co-occur with the entire range of PP's. Let us assume that in (42), \text{Yes} appears in its existential gown, so that the theme is coindexed with the subject position. To avoid confusion, let us put off the question of why \text{Yes} in (42) is uninflected, as compared with the sentences in (36) above, which were given as the paradigm cases for the existential \text{Yes}.

\[(42)\text{ Yes sefer ba-xanut in-the store}\]
\[(42)\text{ is book ecel Dani chez Dani on the-shelf}\text{ on the-shelf}\]
\*[\text{al ha-madaf on the-shelf}]\]
*[\text{mi-taxat la-Sultan under the-table}]\]
*[\text{ba-aron in-the-cupboard}]\]

The generalization which seems to be lurking here, as pointed out to me by R. Kayne, (p.c.), is that felicitous matching of accusative themes with locative PP's is modelled after the possessive construction: The acceptable PP's are those which denote some sense of possession and are not 'purely' locative. Thus, the book's being in the library or at the agents' implies that the library or the agent are not merely places where the book may be found, but also institutions that 'possess' the book in some sense. These cases contrast with the PP's 'on the shelf' and 'under the table' which simply indicate a place.
Ziv (1982a,b) notes that (43a) is grammatical, an indication that the theme is interpreted as non-specific, non-unique. Relevant to our discussion, is her observation that (43a) is inconsistent with a locative reading. It is, however, perfectly consistent with a possessive reading. Another example which makes the same point was suggested to me by A. Marantz (p.c.)

(43) a. yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze ba-sifriya be-SloSa otakim
   is acc the-book the this in-the-library in-three copies
   'this book is in the library in three copies'

   b. be-derex kial yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze ba-sifriya aval
      usually is acc the book the this in-the-library but

      ha-yom be-mikre ein oto ki Xanan Sa'al oto.
      the-day by chance neg is it because Hanan borrowed it

      'this book is generally in the library but today, by chance, it isn't here because Hanan borrowed it.'

Suppose, then, that the locative construction where the theme NP is accusative mimicks the possessive construction, and where a dative possessor subject is fully grammatical, a locative one is acceptable to the degree that it can be interpreted as a possessor.

Note that it is not the mere occurrence of the prepositions be (=‘in’) or ecel (=‘chez’) which serves to license accusative themes. Rather, these prepositions more readily admit of a quasi-possessor interpretation than other prepositions. In (44a), for example, the accusative NP cannot co-occur with the preposition be, since the relation of ‘children’ to ‘school’ is not one of possession. Contrast (44a) with (44b), which is acceptable precisely
because 'blackboards', as opposed to 'children', can be possessed by a school.10

(44) a. *yeS et ha-yeladim ha-ele be-xol betsefer
   is acc the-children the-these in-every school

   b. yeS et ha-luxot ha-ele be-xol betsefer
   is acc the-blackboards the-these in-every school

In 6.3 above, I argued that the dative possessors should be analyzed as indexed PP's rather than as dative Case marked NP's. The possessor-like locative PP's which assume the role of subjects, however, are more like genuine PP's than indexed ones, since e.g., ecel (='chez'), does not have clitic properties. In this repsect the locative PP's differ from the possessive dative PP's.

They are similar, though, in a different sense. They are both subcategorized by a verb and occupy a slot in the verb's thematic grid. We may assume, then, that locative PP's may assume a referential index in virtue of their being subacategorized for.

6.7 Impersonal Agreement with a Dative Subject

---

10 The notion 'possessor' is perhaps not the precise one, given the fact that an accusative theme can also co-occur with e.g. beyn (=in between'), (i).

   (i) yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze beyn
   is acc the-book the-this in between
   ha-encykolpediot the-encyclopedias

Clearly, a more refined notion that 'possession' is called for. Perhaps the relation should be characterized as 'belonging' or 'appertaining to'.
A question left unanswered so far is why the dative PP does not agree with the verb. Whereas Doron (1983) claimed that yes is a 'bare V' which does not bear any agreement, I would like to argue that yes bears 'impersonal' agreement in relation to its dative subject. The third person singular agreement which is characteristic of the possessive construction can be taken to be another instance of the 'impersonal' agreement discussed in Chapter 5. There, to recall, it was shown that subjects which are not, strictly speaking, personal, trigger third person singular 'impersonal' agreement. It seems quite reasonable, then, to assimilate dative PP's into this class, which includes non or quasi-argumental NP subjects and subjects which are not NP's (e.g., clauses, PP's.) Although dative PP's are indexed by percolation from the NP embedded within them, 6.5, we must assume that the categorial nature of the subject, i.e. the fact that it is PP, albeit an indexed PP, counts for agreement. This implies that the feature [+person] is, in and of itself, insufficient to trigger personal agreement. In addition, personal agreement can only be manifested when the subject is an NP.

Impersonal agreement with verbs other than yes, however, is third person singular whereas yes appears stripped of any \( \phi \)-features. In Ch.5, a distinction was drawn between agreement features, (\( \phi \)-features) and the feature [person]. It was argued that whereas distinctive specification of \( \phi \)-features is indeed a necessary condition for argumental pro-drop, it is not sufficient; the person marker must be specified as [+ person] if pro-drop is to be licit. Impersonal subjects, we saw, are specified as third person singular. In some sense, however, any specification of \( \phi \)-features for an impersonal subject is redundant since impersonal subjects do not require specification of person, number or gender. Let us suppose that these
features are present on verbs with impersonal subjects simply because the Hebrew verbal morphology does not have uninflected tensed verb forms. But from the point of view of the agreement, those features are entirely redundant. The verb yeš differs from other verbs in that it has an uninflected finite form and can thus support an impersonal subject even in the absence of overt φ-features.

The fact that yeš does not display any overt agreement with its subject may erroneously be taken to be an indication that clauses with impersonal subjects have no INFL node. I will assume that clauses with yeš are regular clauses which contain an INFL node, although INFL may be stripped of φ-features. This INFL node, although empty of φ-features is, nonetheless, capable of assigning nominative Case to the subject position. This is perhaps why it tolerates a dative (PP) subject. The presence of INFL and the assignment of nominative Case should, thus, be seen as independent of verbal agreement.

Although I will have more to say on this matter shortly, note that if the PP subject of yeš constructions is base-generated inside VP and then optionally raised into [SPEC/IP], movement of yeš into I is also necessary in order for a proper chain to be formed so that the empty category left by movement of the possessor into the subject position be properly governed.

We have seen that yeš can take PP subjects. However, it would not be surprising if it co-occurred with other types of impersonal subjects. This expectation is borne out, as noted by Doron (op. cit:193). In (45a) below,
yeS occurs with a null arbitrary subject and in (45b) the subject is a null expletive coindexed with a clausal argument.

(45) a. yeS lixtov xibur
to write essay
'One must write an essay'

b. yeS Se-haSamayim mit’anenim
that-the sky cloud-up
'Sometimes, the sky clouds up'

6.8 pro-Drop in Possessive yeS-Constructions

It is interesting, at this juncture, to look more closely at pro-drop in the possessive construction. (46a) is acceptable only with the interpretation that there is some unspecified possessor: It is unacceptable as an existential assertion, minimally contrasting with (46b), where both the existential and the possessive readings are available. The superficial difference between (46a) and (46b) is in the definiteness of the theme. This superficial difference masks a deeper one, namely, that in (46b), the theme, which is indefinite, must be associated with the nominative chain since there is no other element in the clause which could assume the subject position. Consequently, the theme NP is parsed as the surface subject of the clause.

(46) a. yeS et ha-sefer ha-ze
is acc: the-book the this

b. yeS sefer ka-ze
is book such
'there is such a book'
Consider, now, the case of (46a). If the theme in (46a) is construed as part of the nominative chain, i.e., if the S-structure of (46a) is taken to be (47a), we would have a chain marked for Case twice: For accusative at its tail and for nominative at its head. Since doubly Case marked chains violate the Chain Condition, (47a) cannot be the right structure for (46a). Rather, there must be 2 chains in (46a), as shown in (47b): pro is not chain coindexed with anything in the clause and is interpreted as a null subject, a null possessor.

(47) a. \[pro_1 \text{ yeS \{et this book\}}\]
    b. \[pro_1 \text{ yeS \{et this book\}}\]

(46b), on the other hand, is potentially ambiguous: since the theme is indefinite and bears no overt mark of accusativity, it could be construed as part of a nominative chain. Such a structure underlies the existential interpretation of (46b). Alternatively, (46b) may be assigned the same structure as (46a), yielding the null possessor reading.

The lack of specificity associated with the null possessor is due to the fact that the relevant notion of 'possession' ranges over a certain subclass of locative/possessive relations which admit of possession by inanimate objects. Perhaps, then, the non-specificity of the null possessor is due to the fact that it may be interpreted as inanimate, blurring somewhat our distinction between 'possession' and 'existence'. The fact that pro-drop is possible in this construction provides further evidence that the type of identification or retrieval of impersonal subjects differs from that of personal subjects.
This concludes our discussion of the possessive yeS in Hebrew. I turn now to some properties of the existential yeS.

6.9 Existential yeS

In the paradigm examples of the existential yeS construction, the theme, i.e. the non-locative element, appears preverbally and agrees with the inflected yeS. I repeat the sentences of (36) above in (48), for convenience.

(48) a. ha-sefer ha-ze yeS-no ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    the-book the-this is-3ms in-the-library the-national
    'this book is (=can be found) in the national library'

b. ha-mellim ha-elu yeS-nam be-kol xanut
    the-coats the-these is-3pl in-every store
    'these coats can be found in every store'

c. ha-mexonit ha-zot yeS-na ecel kol soxen
    the-car-fem the-this-fem is-3fs chez every dealer
    'this car can be found chez every dealer'

The obligatoriness of the inflectional suffix follows from the fact that the subject of the sentences in (48) is personal and thus must agree with the verb.

Borer (1983) has shown that pro-drop in existential yeS constructions is impossible, contrary to the possessive yeS construction discussed above.

(49) *yeS-na ba-gan
    be-3ms in-the-garden
    'she is in the garden'
Moreover, long extraction of the subject of an existential *yes* sentence is deviant, (50a), in contrast to extraction out of a possessive *yes* sentence, (50b).

(50)  
a. *eize sefer lo yadata 'im yes-no 'al ha-madaf  
*which book neg knew+2ms if be-3ms on the shelf  
'through which book didn’t you know whether is on the shelf'

b. eize sefer lo yadata 'im yes ba-sifriya  
*which book neg knew+2ms if be in-the-library  
'through which book didn’t you know if (it) is in the library'

The existential *yes* construction thus recreates the pattern already observed with personal subjects of other verbs in Hebrew.

6.10 The Inflectional Suffixes: Subject clitics or AGR?

Borer (1983) analyzes the agreement suffixes in (48) as clitics properly governing the empty object position. In her system, *yes* is not a proper governor. Hence, when the D-structure object is fronted into the subject position, a clitic must be generated on the verb in order to satisfy the ECP.

At the same time, however, these suffixes pattern like markers of agreement. But in Borer's system the combination of these two properties yields a paradox: As clitics, these suffixes absorb Case but as agreement markers, they must assign it.

This situation is reminiscent of several North Italian dialects in which alleged subject clitics may co-occur with referential subjects. Although I
have little to add to the discussion of subject clitics in these dialects. I would like to claim that the suffixes in Hebrew yes constructions are agreement markers and not clitics. Of course, I am now burdened with the task of accounting for the extractability of the object that Borer's system captures with the assumption that the suffixes in question are, indeed, clitics.

Recall that the version of the ECP adopted in this work considers this principle to be a well-formedness condition on chains. Stated simply, links in a chain must each be antecedent-governed. Thus, even if yes itself were a proper governor, (cf, Ritter (1985)), the antecedent government requirement would still need to be satisfied.

Suppose, as we have throughout this thesis, that this requirement is met in passive and Raising by the formation of a chain whose members are [SPEC/IP], I, V and the empty category in the object position. The first two links are established in virtue of the coindexing of I and [SPEC/IP]. I and V are co-indexed by V-raising into I while the verb and the e.c. are coindexed since V governs the e.c. Seen in these terms, Borer's paradox disappears, since proper government of the empty category, under this approach, does not require a clitic but rather a 'complex' chain which includes AGR. We can, thus, conclude that the suffixes in (46) are, indeed, agreement markers.

Recall, now, that in the possessive yes construction, the possessive dative may be raised into subject position, as in (51) below. But in (51), yes bears no overt agreement, so how is the ECP satisfied?

(51) le-xana yeS et ha-sefer
In 6.6, to recall, I argued that the subject of yes in e.g., (51) is impersonal, in the sense of Ch.5. As such, it does not possess $\phi$-features and does not trigger agreement. However, yes may still move into I, there may and, in fact, probably must still be an INFL node assigning nominative Case to the chain headed by the dative element. Put differently, a stipulation to the effect that yes does not move into INFL would be entirely unprincipled. Thus, it must be assumed that yes may always move into INFL, even when INFL bears no features.

To underscore, movement of yes into I is independent of the presence of overt $\phi$-features; those, I believe, are required only by the presence in the subject position of an NP which bears $\phi$-features itself.

6.11 Hebrew as a North Italian Dialect

In 6.6 above, I argued that a locative PP can be interpreted as a clausal subject of a possessive yes to the degree that it can mimic the semantics of possession or of 'belonging to'. Such a state of affairs arises when the theme is definite and hence barred from being a postverbal subject. I noted that when the theme is indefinite, it can co-occur with the entire range of locative PP's. Being indefinite, the theme can be a postverbal subject and the semantic restrictions on the PP are lifted. In (52), yes appears in its existential cloak, that is, as an unaccusative verb taking a single complement.
Note, now, that when yes is inflected, it doesn't felicitously admit postverbal subjects. To my ears, and to the ears of a number of speakers I have consulted, inflection on yes in (53) is of mildly reduced acceptability. Other speakers find the contrast between (52) and (53) much stronger and contend that an inflected yes in (53) is clearly marginal. The variation seems to be idiolectal.

Notice, however, that the sentences in (53), where inflection is optional, or marginal, differ in the surface order of yes and the theme from those in (48) above, where inflection is obligatory. In the latter, the theme is preverbal, in the former it is postverbal. This state of affairs is reminiscent of the situation in the North Italian dialects, where the distribution of overt agreement markers (the alleged 'subject clitics') is rather arbitrary among the different dialects.11 Leaving this matter for future research, I merely note that, on the basis of the North Italian facts, it is not surprising that the acceptability of agreement with postverbal subjects of yes is subject to variation.

---

11 See Brandi and Cordin (1986), Safir (1985), Rizzi (1985) for discussion of these agreement patterns.
6.12 The have/be Alternation: An Interim Summary

If, indeed, postverbal subjects of existential *yes* do not (obligatorily) trigger agreement on the verb, sentences like (54) below, which I analyzed above as instances of the possessive *yes* - viz. the semantically appropriate PP's- are, in fact, ambiguous: They may also be parsed as instances of the existential *yes* albeit with phonetically unrealized agreement.

(54) a. yeS sefer ka-ze ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    *is book like-this in-the library the-national*
    'there is such a book in the national library'

b. yeS meilim ka-elul be-kol zanut
    *is coats like these in-every store*
    'there are such coats in every store'

c. yeS mexonit ka-zot ecel kol soxen ba-arec
    *is car-fem like this-fem chez every agent in-the country*
    'there is a car like this chez every dealer in the country'

Recall, now, that in our analysis of *there*-constructions in English, we argued that the expletive is replaced by the entire small clause complement of *be*.

Suppose, now, that the existential *yes* is like *be* in that it's complement is a small clause and that *yes*, like *be*, may assign its partitive Case either structurally or inherently. Under these assumptions an S-structure such as (55a), can be associated with an LF such as (55b).
(55) a. S-structure
   pro yes [sc such a book in the library]

b. LF
   [sc such a book] in the library] yeS t_i

To sum up the discussion in the last few pages, a sentence like (56) below is derived by moving a VP-internal NP into the subject position, much like in a passive or Raising construction. Agreement in (56) is obligatory.

(56) ha-sefer ha-ze yeS-no ba-sifriya ha-leumit
    the-book the-this is-3ms in-the-library the-national
    'this book is (=can be found) in the national library'

If the theme NP remains in situ, as in (54) above, in the VP it may be assigned two distinct structures. In one of them, yeS assigns two θ-roles, the theme is assigned accusative and the locative PP is coindexed with the subject pro, (57).

(57) pro_i yeS book_{ACC} [PP in the library]_i

The other structure, (55), is one where yeS is existential and assigns a single θ-role to a small clause complement, which replaces pro in LF.

6.13 Stylistic Inversion in yeS Clauses

There is another possible representation for (54) which we have not considered.

(58) pro_i [i yeS [VP a book_i [VP t_V t_i on the shelf]]]
In (58), yeS has raised into I and the postverbal NP 'a book' is adjoined to VP on the left. In Ch.4, it was shown that in languages such as Hebrew and Spanish, adjunction to the left of VP is the unmarked strategy for subject postposing. Given a string such as (54), however, it is impossible to tell whether adjunction to VP has taken place or whether the postverbal subject is still inside VP. This is so since movement of yeS to INFL renders adjunction of a VP-internal NP to the left of VP string vacuous. In order to 'force' inversion, a definite postverbal subject must be employed. Since definite subjects are, as a rule, barred from the object VP-internal position, unless marked with et, a possibility which is neutralized in (58) by the presence of a PP which does not co-occur felicitously with accusative themes, such a NP generated inside VP would be compelled to adjoin to VP in order to escape the definiteness effect.

In Ch.4, we noted that adjunction to VP is licensed by a trigger such as a fronted adverb. We also noted that a 'heavy' NP can adjoin to VP on the right, also escaping the DE. This is shown for yeS clauses in (59)-(60).

(59) a. ?me'az etmol, yeS/-nam ha-sfarim ha-elu
     since yesterday, be-3ms the-books the-these
     since yesterday these books are on the shelf

b. ?karega yeS-nam Dani ve-MoSe
     now, be-3ms Dani and-Moshe
     'Now, there are Dani and moSe'
     (Doron, op. cit. 170)

c. ba-khila
     ha-israylit kan yeS-na ha-hargaSa......
     in-the-community the-Israeli here be-3ls the-feeling
     'in the Israeli community here there is the feeling......'
     (Tobin (1982) (22); cited in Ritter (op. cit.))
The marginality that some speakers find in sentences like those in (59), as opposed to the naturalness of (60), is due, I think, to the interaction of two factors: First, there is a carryover from the marginality of inflection on yeš when it's subject is postverbal, an indication that in Hebrew, as in, say, Trentino, the restriction on overt agreement is founded on considerations of linear order and not hierarchical order. When yeš is stripped of inflection, however, the marginality remains. This may be due to the fact that inversion in (59) is string vacuous and some sort of parsing mechanism prefers the less marked 'accusative' structure over the more highly marked inverted one, even though the PP 'on the shelf' is semantically inappropriate as a clausal subject. Thus, even though inversion is 'forced' syntactically, speakers still prefer to associate (59) with an accusative structure, albeit an ill-formed one.

This speculation predicts that when adjunction is not string vacuous, it ought to be fine, since the parser would not be faced with a potential ambiguity. Adjunction to VP on the right, which is not string vacuous if there are other elements inside VP, is restricted in Hebrew to 'heavy' NP's and in fact, the DE can be circumvented by right-adjunction more naturally than by left-adjunction, as shown in (60).

6.14 Other Unaccusatives which Assign Accusative Case
The analysis developed so far carries over to a range of sentences discussed in Shoshani (1980) and Borer (1983, 1986). Consider the following paradigms. The verbs in (61)-(63), pattern like the locative yeS sentences we have just examined, in giving rise to three possible representations.

(61) a. hayta ktuva yedi’a xaSuva ba-’iton
   *was written-f message-f important-f in-the-paper* 
   'An important message was written in the paper'

b. yedi’a xaSuva hayta ktuva ba-’iton
   *message important was -f written-f in-the-paper* 
   Same as (61a.)

c. haya katuv 'et ha-yedi’a ha-zot ba-’iton
   *was written-m acc the-message the-this-f in-the-paper* 
   'This message wa written in the paper'

(62) a. meforatim harbe dvarim ba-karoz ha-ze
   *specified many things-m-pl in-the-leaflet the-this* 
   'Many things are specified in this leaflet'

b. harbe dvarim meforatim ba-karoz ha-ze
   *many things-m-pl specified in-the-leaflet the-this* 
   (same as (62a))

c. meforat 'et ha-dvarim ha-’ele ba-karoz ha-ze
   *specified acc the things the-these in-the-leaflet* 
   'These things are specified in this leaflet'

(63) a. karta 1-i te’una xamura ba-derex
   *happened-f DAT-me accident-f serious-f on-the-way* 
   'I had a serious accident on the way'

b. te’una xamura karta 1-i ba-derex
   *accident-f serious-f happened-f DAT-me on-the-way* 
   (same as (63a.).)
In the (a) sentences in (61)-(63), the subject position is null at S-structure and the verb, being unaccusative, assigns it no θ-role. The (a) examples thus illustrate typical unaccusative configurations with a postverbal (VP-internal) subject. The LF representation for, say, (61a) is given in (64).

(64) \[\text{NP important message}_i \text{ was written } t_i \text{ in-the-paper}\]

Let us assume that the participle 'written' does not share with yes the property of taking a small clause complement. The PP 'in the paper' is, thus, an adjunct modifying the verb and not a restriction or delimitation of the NP 'important message'.

The (b) sentences exemplify preverbal subjects in unaccusative configurations: The subject is moved from it's VP-internal D-structure position to the [SPEC/IP] position.

Consider, now, the sentences in (61c)-(63c). The verbs assign accusative to the postverbal NP. Agreement, though, is third person singular. These sentences, which are clearly substandard, display the strategy taken by the possessive construction we have examined: These verbs are re-analyzed, in
Borer's terms, as assigners of accusative Case. Yet if the postverbal NP is assigned accusative Case, some other element must be chain-linked with the null expletive in order to avoid a Chain Condition violation. I conjecture that the nominative chain is constructed with 'in the paper' in (61c), 'in the leaflet' in (62c) and the dative PP in (63c) all of which are semantically compatible with the 'quasi-possessor' interpretation discussed above in 6.5. Although I have not been able to locate speakers with native judgments on these sub-standard sentences, my conjecture is that there is a significant degradation in acceptability in the (c) sentences, if the 'other element' is an inappropriate quasi-possessor or is missing altogether.\(^{12}\)

\[(65)\]  
\begin{align*}
\text{'This message was written (the day before yesterday)'}
\end{align*}

\[(66)\]  
\begin{align*}
\text{'These things are specified (at six p.m.)'}
\end{align*}

\(^{12}\) Shoshani gives several examples which I cannot account for under the hypothesis that the presence of an accusative object requires that some other element be associated with the nominative chain.

(i) niSbar et ha-kise  
\begin{align*}
\text{was broken acc the-chair}
\end{align*}

(ii) kara et ze etmol  
\begin{align*}
\text{occurred acc this, yesterday}
\end{align*}
(67) c'. *kara kvar 'et ha-teuna ha-zot
happened-ms already acc the-accident-f the-this-f

(kodem)
(before)

'this accident has already occured before'

6.15 The h.y.y Forms

In the preceding discussion, I concentrated on the behavior of the verb yeS. In this section, I would like to attend to the h.y.y forms in the possessive construction.13

Perhaps the most striking difference between these forms and yeS lies in the pattern of agreement. In 68), a possessive construction which we analyzed as 'have'-like in that accusative Case is assigned to the theme and the verb agrees with the theme rather than bearing impersonal, i.e., third person masculine singular agreement with the dative possessor.

(68) a. hay-u le-Dani sfarim
were-3mpl DAT-Dani books
'Dani had books'

b. hay-ta le-Dani mexonit yafa
was-3fs DAT-Dani car-f pretty-f
'Dani had a pretty car'

13 See Doron (1983), Hermon (1984) for alternative views. The latter work discusses these and other Hebrew facts in a broader, crosslinguistic context and attempts a unified explanation for possessive and experiencer constructions in a number of languages.
Impersonal agreement, that is, third person singular, is possible, but not quite as felicitous.

(69) a. hay-a le-Dani sfarim  
    was-3ms DAT-Dani books  
    'Dani had books'

b. hay-a le-Dani mexit yafa  
    was-3ms DAT-Dani car-f pretty-f  
    'Dani had a pretty car'

Note, moreover, that for many speakers agreement with the theme is possible even when it is definite and appears with et.

(70) a. hay-u le-Dani et ha-sfarim ha-elu  
    were-3mpl DAT-Dani acc the-books the-these  
    'Dani had these books'

b. hay-ta le-Dani et ha-mexonit ha-zot  
    was-3fs DAT-Dani acc the-car-f the-this-f  
    'Dani had this car'

Whereas speakers will, without exception, accept (69), that is, permit agreement with an indefinite theme, the acceptability of the sentences in (70) is subject to dialectal variation. For those speakers who reject (70), the verb appears in its 'impersonal' form, as in (71).

(71) a. hay-a le-Dani et ha-sfarim  
    was-3ms DAT-Dani acc the-books the-these

b. hay-a le-Dani et ha-mexonit ha-zu  
    was-3ms DAT-Dani acc the-car-f the-this-f
Let us begin by calling the dialect illustrated in (68) and (71), Dialect A and that of (68) and (70) Dialect B.

Now, as if to complicate matters, speakers of both dialects do not accept sentences in which the theme is in the canonical subject position, that is, they reject (72).

(72) *sfarim hay-u le-Dani
     *et ha-sfarim hay-u le-Dani
     *et ha-sfarim hay-a le-Dani

W.r.t the yeS forms, to recall, we claimed that the possessive yeS is unambiguously have-like in that it assigns accusative Case and two θ-roles, whereas two distinct representations, i.e. one like be, the other like have, are associated the existential yeS. If we were to pursue the idea that the availability of two distinct representations was carried over in the h.y.y forms into the possessive construction we could not explain why the theme cannot move into the subject position, in contrast to the theme of the existential yeS.

In the discussion that follows, I will make the premiss that verbal agreement is always with a subject and propose an analysis in the spirit of Kayne's recent research into past participle agreement in Romance.
Let us hypothesize, on the basis of the unacceptability of (72), that the dative possessor is always the clausal subject and that the null expletive is associated with it and never with the theme.\footnote{An alternative would be to allow the theme to be the subject, and reduce the impossibility of (72) to the impossibility of passivization of the object of have, as in (i). (i) *these books were had by John} That is to say, we reject an analysis of these cases along the lines which we pursued for the existential/locative sentences for which we claimed that yeS can be either like 'have' or like 'be', allowing either the theme or the possessor to assume the role of the subject.

The examples in (69) as well as those of (71) require no modification of our analysis: h.y.y, like yeS assigns accusative Case and does not agree with the theme but rather, bears impersonal agreement with the dative possessor.

Since agreement in (68) as well as in (70) is superficially with an object yet is restricted, by hypothesis, to the subject, it must be the case that the theme is a subject in some sense. Suppose, then, that these h.y.y sentences are biclausal, in the sense that they have two subjects. Consider (73), as a first approximation.

(73)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{NP}_1 \\
\text{I} \\
\text{VP} \\
\text{h.y.y} \\
\text{theme} \\
\end{array}
\]

I will not pursue this alternative in this work.
h.y.y raises into I in (73) and agreement is, indeed, with the theme which is coindexed with a 'subject' daughter of VP. Now we must ask where the place of the possessor is in this structure. Let us maintain our original assumption that the possessor is generated as sister to V'. Thus, consider (74).

(74)  
```
          VP
         /  
NP_i  I'
     /   
  I    VP
     /   
PP  V'
   /   
possessor V  NP_i
     /   
  h.y.y theme
```

The structure in (74) must be augmented, however, since it is only a VP. The clausal subject in (75) below contains an expletive coindexed with the possessor, as required.

(75)  
```
          IP
         /  
NP_i  I'
     /   
  I    VP_2
     /   
NP_i  I'
     /   
  VP_1 V'
   /   
possessor V  NP_i
     /   
  h.y.y theme
```
Let us consider whether the various chains in (75) are well-formed. \textit{h.y.y} raises, first into the lower I, where agreement with the lower theme subject is established. Then, suppose, it moves up into the higher I. The verb chain is well formed in that it is a subcase of head-to-head movement. The VP's that it crosses become L-marked by the verb's amalgamation with I, in both cases. The difference between the lower I and the higher one is that the higher one is empty and contains no features of agreement, it may be conceived of as a null auxiliary or like an empty COMP in verb-fronting languages.

The possessor must be able to move into the clausal subject position. Let us follow its trail: Since it may not adjoin to any category, it must move directly up into the NP/S position. It first crosses VP\textsubscript{1} which is not a barrier since it is L-marked by V+I, (i.e., when \textit{h.y.y} moves into it.) It then crosses I' which is not a barrier, since it is a single bar projection. The dominating VP, VP\textsubscript{2}, is L-marked by the higher V+I. The only potential problem for possessor raising is if the minimality condition were to restrict it's movement out of the lower VP, i.e., VP\textsubscript{1}.

But note that the possessor is generated as sister to V' and not as a sister to V. We must, then, concur with Chomsky (1986b) that a minimality barrier is the category immediately dominating a lexical head and not its maximal projection. Thus NP\textsubscript{1} lies outside the minimality domain of V. The defectiveness of the I projection inhibits its capacity to invoke a minimality violation.
In different terms, the trace of the raised possessor may be antecedent-governed directly from the subject position since there are no barriers separating them. In fact, there is no reason why the verb needs to move into the higher I at all, since it is not needed for a 'complex chain' to be established.

One consequence to this analysis is that it provides an alternative explanation for why the possessive yeS is not inflected. In 6.6, we argued that this was so since the impersonal PP subject does not need to agree with it, but we maintained the position that yeS moves into I in order for a complex chain to be formed, licensing the empty category left by raising the possessor into the subject position. But if the discussion in this section is on the right track, we may dispose of that extra step altogether.

At the beginning of this section, I characterized two dialects. But, on closer view, such a characterization is problematic since the two dialects are not internally consistent. Speakers of Dialect A, use the bi-clausal strategy when the theme is indefinite and the have form when the theme is definite. Moreover, I have not been able to locate speakers who speak a 'pure' dialect, accepting only (68), (71) but not (69) or (70).

In the prescriptive grammar of Hebrew, accusative Case with either yeS or h.y.y is disallowed. In the spoken idiom, yeS is an accusative-assigning verb whereas the h.y.y forms still retain some of their prescriptive behavior. This leads me to agree with Ziv (1976) that Hebrew is undergoing syntactic changes which are still incomplete. The facts should then be treated as a 'mixed-bag' rather than as two distinct dialects.
On the synchronic plane, I have tried to sketch the various syntactic devices utilized in these constructions. The data discussed in this section favor the view that syntactic change may be gradual, in the sense that new grammatical possibilities are introduced before old ones become outdated.
Adams, Marianne, From Old French to the Theory of pro-Drop’ NLLT 5 1-32


Aoun, Joseph, (1985), Generalized Binding Foris, Dordrecht

Ayoub, Georgine ‘Structure de la Phrase Verbale en Arabe Standard’ Unpublished Thèse de Doctorat de Troisième Cycle, Université de Paris, VII


Benveniste, Emile (1966) Problems in General Linguistics

Berman, Ruth, (1978) Modern Hebrew Structure, University Publishing Projects, Tel-Aviv
Berman, Ruth, (1979) 'Form and Function: Passives, Middles and Impersonals in Modern Hebrew' Proceedings of the Fifth Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society


Borer, Hagit (1983), Parametric Syntax Foris, Dordrecht

Borer, Hagit (1984), 'Restrictive Relatives in Modern Hebrew' NLLT2, 219-260

Borer, Hagit, (1986a), 'I-Subjects' LI 17.3 375-416

Borer, Hagit, (1986b) 'Parallel Morphology' Talk given at Lexicon Seminar, MIT

Borer, Hagit, (1987), 'Anaphoric AGR' Unpublished Manuscript, University of California, Irvine


Brandi, Luciana and Patrizia Cordin, to appear in Jaeggli & Safir (eds.) Reidel
Bresnan, Joan (1976) 'On the Form and Function of Transformations' L1 7, 3-40

Bresnan, Joan (1977) 'Variables in the theory of Transformations', in Culicover, et. al. (eds.) op. cit.

Bresnan, Joan & Jane Grimshaw, (1978), 'The Syntax of Free Relatives in English' L1 9, 331-391

Bouchard, Denis (1984), On the Content of Empty Categories Foris, Dordrecht

Brody, Michael (1984), 'On Contextual Definitions and the Role of Chains', L1 15.3 355-380

Burzio, Luigi, (1986) Italian Syntax Reidel, Dordrecht

Calabrese, Andrea, (1985) 'Focus and logical Structures in Italian', unpublished manuscript, MIT


Chomsky, Noam, (1977), 'On WH-Movement' in Culicover, et. al. (eds.)


Chomsky, Noam, (1986a) Knowledge of Language Praeger, New-York

Chomsky, Noam, (1986b), Barriers MIT Press, Cambridge, MA

Chomsky, Noam and Howard Lasnik, (1977), 'Filters and Control' L18 425-504

Chung, Sandra, (1983), 'The ECP and Government in Chamorro' NLLT 1 207-244

Culicover, Peter, Tom Wasow and Adrian Akmajian, (eds.) *Formal Syntax*, Academic Press, NY


Emonds, Joseph (1978) 'The Verbal Complex V'-V in French' *LI* 9.2, 151-175


Fukui, Naoki and Margaret Speas, 'Specifiers and Projection', in Fukui, N., T. Rappoport and E. Sagey, (eds.)


Givón, Talmy (1976) 'On the VS word order in Israeli Hebrew: Pragmatics and Typological Change' in Cole, op.cit


Guéron, Jacqueline (1987), 'Le Verbe Avoir' *Recherche Linguistiques de Vincennes, 14/15*

Hazout, Ilan, (1986) The Pronoun ZE in Hebrew Unpublished manuscript, University of Massachusetts, Amherst

Guerssel, Mohammed (1986), Subject Clitic Doubling in Berber, Unpublished manuscript, MIT

Haïk, Isabelle, (1984) 'Indirect Binding' LI 15.2 185-224


Higginbotham, James, (1980), 'Pronouns and Bound Variables', LI 11 pp.679-708


Jaeggli, Osvaldo, A., (1986a) 'Arbitrary Plural Pronominals', *NLLT* 4/1 43-76


Jenkins, Lyle, (1972) 'Modality in English Syntax' Unpublished Ph.D Dissertation, MIT


Manzini, M.R (1987) 'Phrase Structure Theory, Binding, Reanalysis' Talk given at GLOW


Mouchaweh, Loubana, (1986) 'De la Syntaxe des Petites Propositions', Thèse de Doctorat de Troisième Cycle, Université de paris, VIII


Pesetsky, David (1982), 'Paths and Categories', unpublished MIT Ph.D dissertation

Platzack, Christer, (1985), 'The Scandinavian Languages and the Null Subject Parameter', Working Papers in Scandinavian Syntax * 20, University of Trondheim


Reinhart, Tanya, (1986) 'Specifier and Operator Binding' in Reuland & ter Meulen, (eds.)


Ritter (1985) 'What EYN't There: An Analysis of the Hebrew Negative Particle' Unpublished manuscript, MIT
Ritter (1986) 'NSO Noun Phrases in a VSO Language' *Proceedings of NELS 17*


Rizzi, Luigi, (1986) 'Null Objects in Italian and Theory of *pro* LI 17.3 501-558


Rouveret, Alain and J-R Vergnaud (1980) 'Specifying Reference to the Subject', LI 11.1, 97-202

Safir, Ken, (1984) Multiple Variable Binding* LI 15*


Shlonsky, Uri, (1967) 'Donkey Parasites' in *Proceedings of NELS 17*

Shlonsky, Uri (forthcoming) 'Complementizer-Adjunction in Hebrew and the ECP' NLLT

Shoshani, R. (1980), The Object Marker in Hebrew in Intransitive Constructions' Unpublished manuscript, Tel-Aviv University


Torrego, Ester, (1986) 'On Empty Categories in Nominals' Unpublished manuscript, University of Massachusetts, Boston


Williams, Edwin, (1980) 'Predication' *LI* 11.1

Williams, Edwin, (1984) 'THERE-Insertion' *LI* 15.1 131-154


Ziv, Yael (1982a) 'Another Look at Definites in Existentials', *Linguistics* 18 73-88